U S O N G.

AN

ORIENTAL HISTORY

IN FOUR BOOKS.

TRANSLATED from the GERMAN

OF

BARON ALBERT VON HALLER,

Preſident of the Royal Society at *Gottingen*, and the Œconomical Society at *Bern*, &c.

LONDON.

Printed for J. WILKIE, No. 71, St. Paul's Church-Yard; C. HEYDINGER, oppoſite Eſſex Street, Strand; and S. LEACROFT, Charing Croſs.

MDCCLXXIII.

TO THE

QUEEN.

MADAM,

THE following Oriental Hiſtory lays claim to YOUR ROYAL protection; for it is calculated to promote an intereſt YOUR MAJESTY has much at heart—THE INTEREST OF VIRTUE.

THE Perſian Court, in USONG's time, was the reſidence of piety, of benevolence, and of all thoſe ſocial graces which enoble human Nature, and add luſtre to a Throne. The Britiſh Court, under the

auſpices of a Monarch ſo much reſembling USONG, and a Queen ſo ſimilar to LIOSUA, muſt alſo be a fit reſidence for ſuch celeſtial gueſts, who cannot but chooſe to dwell where they meet with the moſt endearing reception.

THIS, MADAM, is not exaggeration, it is not in the fulſome ſtyle of panegyric, it is the language of truth; all Europe bears teſtimony to the excellence of our Sovereign, all Britain is unanimous in extolling the virtues of his Conſort.

YOUR MAJESTY is ſufficiently acquainted with the merits of the following work; to YOU, therefore, MADAM, there is no neceſſity for ſaying any thing in its favour: nor will the Public deſire any better recommendation than the approbation of a Queen, whoſe taſte is refined as her diſpoſition amiable, and her actions truly virtuous.

FOR

DEDICATION.

FOR the Tranſlator much apology is neceſſary: he hath attempted an arduous taſk, hath eſſayed to convey to the mind of an Engliſh Reader, beauties which an accurate acquaintance with the original only can enable him thoroughly to reliſh. Yet he flatters himſelf he hath not altogether failed in the attempt; he hath felt his Author's excellencies, hath been charmed with his ſublimities, and thus wrought upon, he hath aimed at making his Engliſh USONG ſpeak a language underſtood alike in Cottages as at Courts—THE LANGUAGE OF THE HEART.

SHOULD this effort be deemed worthy of ſucceſs, it is poſſible that WIELAND and GELLERT may hereafter aſſume an Engliſh dreſs, and ſolicit the patronage of YOUR MAJESTY. But whatever may be the fate of the following Work, the

Tranſlator thinks his labours more than amply compenſated, by the opportunity the publication of it affords him, of congratulating the beſt of QUEENS on the birth of a PRINCE, whom he ſincerely hopes may prove another USONG; ſo bleſt with all his Father's virtues, ſo adorned with his Mother's condeſcending affability, that in him mankind may ſee his ILLUSTRIOUS PARENTS, and ſeeing—may ADMIRE.

PERMIT me to profeſs myſelf, with the profoundeſt humility and reſpect,

MADAM,

YOUR MAJESTY's

Moſt dutiful, moſt loyal
Subject and Servant,
The TRANSLATOR.

ADVERTISEMENT.

To the PUBLIC in GENERAL, And the BOOKSELLERS in particular.

A Surreptitious Engliſh Edition of this Work, tranſlated at ſecond hand from the French, having lately appeared; the Proprietors of the following Tranſlation from the GERMAN ORIGINAL *think it incumbent on them to acquaint the Public in general, and the Trade in particular, with the ſeveral remarkable circumſtances attending this Publication.*

In the beginning of the year 1772, *the Proprietors of this Tranſlation cauſed the following Advertiſement to be inſerted in moſt of the Town and Country News-papers:*

"*In the Preſs, and ſoon will be publiſhed,*

USONG; *An* ORIENTAL HISTORY. *Tranſlated from the German Original of* Baron Albert von Haller, *&c. Printed for* C. Heydinger, *oppoſite Eſſex-Street, Strand.*"

This Advertiſement being ſeveral times repeated, the Proprietors thought they had effectually ſecured to themſelves an EXCLUSIVE RIGHT *in the Copy of the ſaid Tranſlation. Amongſt the Trade ſuch procedure is deemed quite ſufficient to eſtabliſh a Property in any Work tranſlated from a foreign language.*

Some time after this preſent Tranſlation had been taken in hand, a German copy of USONG *was preſented to our moſt amiable Queen, by the deſire of Baron* Haller. *After a peruſal thereof, Her Majeſty expreſſed a wiſh of ſeeing it ſoon tranſlated into Engliſh. This hint was ſufficient to ſet a Labourer in the Goſpel Vineyard to work; the Rev. Mr.* Pl——a *zealouſly undertook the taſk, and* INTERESTEDLY *publiſhed his Tranſlation, though he was informed, when he borrowed the German original of Mr.* Heydinger, *that a Tranſlation was in hand.*

As ſoon as the Proprietors heard of this Rev. Mr. Pl——a's *Tranſlation, one of them waited on him, with a view of accommodating matters; but he then denied his having tranſlated the Work, and expreſſed*

ſom e

ſome knowledge of a Tranſlation undertaken by ſome of his acquaintance, which he however thought would never be printed. Six days after (Nov. 13, 1772) *he ſent a Letter to Mr.* Heydinger, *wherein he thus expreſſes himſelf concerning the Tranſlation:* "*I did not know whether* "USONG, *tranſlated in Engliſh, would ever be printed,* "*but now I find that it is actually in the Preſs, and the* "*beginning printed off.*" *A few days after his firſt volume was ready for publication, and the Proprietors of this being informed thereof, found that the Rev. Mr.* Pl — a *had himſelf employed the Printer and Bookſeller. They accordingly waited on him a ſecond time, and offered him Twenty Guineas, beſides paying all expences for paper and print, to deſiſt from publiſhing his Tranſlation; or to accept of preciſely the* SAME *Conditions from him, and ſtop the publication of this edition. The Reverend Tranſlator then owned his tranſlation, but thought proper however to reject this equitable propoſal. It was juſt, it was honourable, it was fair.*

Whether the STEALING *into the world a* SURREPTITIOUS EDITION *of a Work; whether taking advantage of the Advertiſement inſerted by the Proprietors of the following Tranſlation, and ſelling upon that Advertiſement; whether infringing upon an honorary engagement, rigidly obſerved by all men of rectitude in the Bookſelling branch of buſineſs; whether this be not diſhonourable, unfair, and totally unbecoming the character of a* CLERICAL *Tranſlator, who highly declared himſelf void of ſelf-intereſt, let the Public determine. All that the Proprietors will ſay for themſelves is, that at a conſiderable expence they have undertaken this Edition, and under every diſcouragement they have compleated it; as well to aſſert their own, as to maintain the rights of others* IN THE TRADE: *Since, if thoſe honorary engagements, which are now by Bookſellers deemed* SACRED, *ſhould once be broken through, literary Property is at an end, and no man will think of undertaking a Tranſlation, the right to which he cannot aſcertain, nor ſecure the property thereof.*

PRE-

PREFACE.

BY the repeated ſolicitations of ſeveral friends, I have at length been prevailed on to beſtow a few hours in abridging and reducing, into a regular form, a Manuſcript, the Author of which is unknown.

USUM (but according to the Portugueſe pronunciation USONG) was certainly a moſt illuſtrious Perſian Monarch; *Pedro Bizarro* hath celebrated him in the following words: "*Fuit* "*decora proceritate, vi corporis, licet gra-* "*cilis, admodum inſignis: forma principe* "*viro digna, liberalis præterea, fortis,* "*magnanimus, prudens, bellicoſus, viſuque* "*& auditu juxta venerabilis* *."

HE conquered all Perſia in a few years, and poſſeſſed more extenſive dominions than any of his ſucceſſors, particularly towards the Weſt, in Meſopotamia and Armenia. He conceived the moſt favourable opinion of Chriſtianity,

* Hiſtor. Regn. Perſ. L. X. pag. 263.

and

and lived in perfect harmony with his Consort, a Trebizontine Princess, who had been bred in, and continued to profess the Christian Religion*. His wars with the Turks, with the Soldan of Egypt, with *Abusaid*, and the other Princes of Persia, are described by the European Writers nearly in the same manner as in this manuscript. He died on the 6th of January, in the year 1488 †; during the time of *Barbaro*'s residence at his Court, in the quality of Envoy from Venice. Both *Barbaro*'s, as well as *Contarini*'s accounts of their Embassies, are now extant. USONG's daughter was married to HAIDER, a Descendant of ALI, and she was mother to ISHMAEL, the Ancestor of the SOPHIS.

IN other particulars this manuscript differs from the European histories. The former makes him a Mongalian; the latter a descendant of the Turcomans,

* Idem, ibid.

† *Barbaro*, p. 479. Other Authors say in 1478, and *Herbelot* 1482; but *Barbaro* was present.

a peo-

a people too barbarous and vicious* to produce ſo excellent and liberal minded a Prince as USONG. *Timur* we know ſtigmatized *Bajazet*, for a ſuppoſed inſult, with the epithet of Turcoman. The Weſtern Hiſtorians ſeem entirely unacquainted with USONG's travels; though they relate, nearly in the ſame manner as this Manuſcript, his friendſhip with the Venetians, the Embaſſies of *Zeno*, *Barbaro*, and *Contarini*; but they ſuppoſe him to have had not only a daughter, but ſeveral ſons, who ſurvived him. They alſo attributed ſeveral domeſtic regulations, which are ſtill obſerved in Perſia, to other Emperors; and make no mention of USONG's firſt Conſort, as having been a Chineſe Princeſs.

I HAVE diſcovered ſome inſtances wherein the Eaſtern and Weſtern Writers differ in their accounts of USONG, and particularly that ſome of the Tſhengides have reigned till lately in Perſia; but I had not leiſure ſufficient to enter

* See HANWAY.

upon

upon a critical compariſon of thoſe accounts. I have abridged the manuſcript, and thought proper to omit here *Veribenis*'s account * of the laſt days of USONG's life. It appeared to me of too ſerious a nature for an Hiſtory, which, though written with a profeſſed deſign of recommending virtue, is yet intermingled with amourous tales. It is eaſy to perceive that USONG was indebted to his laſt friend, for thoſe ſublime hopes Chriſtianity inſpires. The proper names of perſons and places I have left in their Oriental form.

MAY I claim indulgence from the candid Reader, for having employed my time in a work perhaps much better adapted to the pen of a more juvenile Writer?

Bern, Auguſt 29, 1771.

HALLER.

* THE Tranſlator takes the liberty of informing his Readers, that this account has ſince been publiſhed by Baron *Haller*, and will ſhortly make its appearance in Engliſh.

USONG.

BOOK I.

TWO renovations had the human Race undergone, ſince the Imperial Houſe of the *Iwen* had been depoſed from the Throne of China. The Deſcendants of the deified *Oguz*, and the powerful *Tſhengis*, had been reduced to their former middling ſtation. They were numerous; each Prince lived with his Hord, and ſubſiſted by the breeding of cattle, and by hunting. The treaſures of China; the delightful garments wore on feſtive occaſions; the pomp of Palankines; the almoſt innumerable Mandarine Attendants; the ſplendid luſtre of the Throne——all, all, had vaniſhed away, and a fur, ſtripped from ſome ravenous Beaſt, was now the dreſs of thoſe who ſprung from the Conqueror of the World.

ONE of them, being a Chief of the eldeſt branch of the great *Kublai*, the bold TIMUR-

TASH, pitched his tents in winter on the weſtern Shore of the Kokonor * His numerous flocks o'erſpread a ſpacious field, and his faithful Subjects lived in pleaſing harmony, and domeſtic peace around him: In the ſummer he drew, by degrees, towards the Mountains of Ulan, where he found ſhelter and paſture ſufficient for his horſes and his cattle. TIMURTASH forgot not, however, that he was a Deſcendant of the *Iwens*,† who, by their attachment to the Bonzes, had loſt their power; and by one of their treacherous ſervants, the ſucceſsful *Hungwu* had been dethroned. He conceived, therefore, in his mind an implacable hatred againſt the Prieſts, whoſe ſuperſtition had enervated the manly virtues of the *Tſhengides*, and whoſe ſelfiſhneſs had filled the Court with diſhoneſt Servants, and had induced the Prince to indulge himſelf in the fouleſt luſts. TIMURTASH could alſo not forgive the Ming; that the Deſcendants of a deſpicable Prieſt's ſervant ſhould occupy the moſt ſplendid Throne in the World, and enjoy all the pre-eminence of a ſon of Heaven, which he

* A great Lake in the Mongaley, weſtward of Shenſi.

† See the Univerſal Hiſtory.

looked

looked upon as his undoubted right by inheritance.

SMALL, however, as the number of his Mongalians were, yet did TIMURTASH, nevertheleſs, take that furious vengeance to which he thought himſelf entitled. Towards the Weſt he made inceſſant War upon the deified Prieſt, who ſuffered himſelf to be worſhipped at Laſſa; and he made frequent incurſions eaſtward into the neighbouring Provinces of China. The furious Wars he waged againſt the Enemies of his Forefathers accuſtomed his Hords to arms; inſomuch, that they became the moſt valiant amongſt all the Tribes which ſubmitted to the race of the *Tſhengides*. Victory crowned their courage with ſucceſs; they grew formidable to all around them, and the high opinion they conceived of their own valour, rendered them almoſt invincible.

TIMURTASH once made an inroad towards the Weſt; he came with a ſelect party of Horſe as far as to the Lake of Zila, when, from a gently-riſing hill, he beheld an enormous train of Tibetes approaching, which, with a pomp uncommon in thoſe Deſarts, directed their march towards Laſſa. A bright Throne was placed upon an Elephant, and the perſon ſeated on this royal

Pavilion was ſhaded with ſilk curtains. A number of ornamented waggons ſeemed to be filled with women; other carriages were laden with coſtly things, and princely furniture; many colours flying graced this Train, and the armed Attendants who guarded it were cloathed in far more gorgeous apparel, than what even the ſubjects of the *Dalai Lama* uſually wear.

LIKE a Faulcon, that ſwift as lightening darts upon the affrighted Hern, thus did TIMURTASH ruſh impetuous amongſt the forces of the Prieſt. They flew diſmayed, and left the ineſtimable booty behind them.

THE Prince approached the Elephant, anxious to have a nearer view of the prize. The curtains being drawn aſide, a beautiful Charmer, in royal Ornament, appeared; and, in an unknown language, implored the Conqueror, for pity's ſake, to ſpare her life. TIMURTASH had never yet experienced the pleaſing force of love; nor had he, amongſt his Mongalian women, ſeen as yet a ſhape, that had charms ſufficient to attract his notice. The Princeſs, now his priſoner, was moſt exquiſitely beautiful; ſhe far exceeded every thing TIMURTASH had beheld; and the faireſt, if compared with her, became deformed. She had that ſlender ſhape, thoſe arched

arched eye-brows, large ſparkling eyes, and the majeſtic features of an inhabitant of *Kaſhmir*. But ſhe as much excelled the other beauties of her Country by her own perſonal charms, as ſhe was exalted far above them by her illuſtrious birth: for ſhe was the daughter of the King of this fortunate Country, and they were conveying her to *Dalai Lama*,* a Youth lately deified, that ſhe might become his Bride.

TIMURTASH now felt emotions in his breaſt, which, until that hour, he had been an entire ſtranger to. His heart had hitherto experienced nothing but the Victor's ſavage joy, and the ferocious pleaſure that ſatiated Vengeance affords. At once he found that there were pleaſures of a more exalted nature; and from almighty Love he was now taught to expect joys, more delicate, laſting, and refined, than thoſe ariſing from Glory, or from Conqueſt.

* The Dalai Lama, even in our times, is a Man deified by the conſent of the People. The Lama, or Prieſts of the Tangutes and Tibetes, teach their followers that *Fo* inſpires this Dalai Lama. After whoſe death the youth bearing the neareſt reſemblance to the laſt Dalai Lama, is pitched upon to enjoy the ſacred honour of being inſpired by *Fo*. To ſuch a newly-deified youth as this the Princeſs was conveying when TIMURTASH met her.

TIMURTASH behaved to the Princeſs with all imaginable courteouſneſs; his heart felt, and when the heart feels it diſdains all reſtriction from particular manners or cuſtoms. In his eyes, and his geſtures, the Princeſs might read that ſhe had nothing to fear; nay, that ſhe would meet with as much veneration amongſt the Mongalians, as ſhe could have hoped for at Laſſa: this alſo was evident from the behaviour of TIMURTASH. He diſmiſſed the greateſt part of her retinue, and kept only thoſe of her women attendants whom the Princeſs choſe ſhould accompany her. He mounted her upon a ſwift horſe, and haſtened with her towards the Mountains.

The whole Hord adored the victorious TIMURTASH; and a contentious ſtruggle aroſe amongſt them, who ſhould ſhew the beautiful Priſoner the moſt reſpect, as they were no ſtrangers to the Prince's affection for her. She learned the Mongalian language of her Lover; he was yet young, and although his features beſpoke a Mongalian, yet his active ſoul gave an air of life and dignity to his whole perſon. The Eaſtern Princeſſes are accuſtomed to ſurrender up themſelves to him to whom fate leads them; their condition is ſuch as not to allow them

to

to bargain, or make a choice for themſelves. *Sheheriſtani*, for ſuch was the name of the King of *Kaſhimir*'s daughter, yielded to the ſolicitation of her Conqueror, and became his Bride.

TIMURTASH had now more than ever offended the Tibetes; he therefore redoubled his attacks upon a people, from whom he had the moſt ſevere vengeance to dread; and his whole life was a ſeries of ſmall victories. His charming Conſort was delivered of a Prince, the very model of herſelf: He had nothing of a Mongalian, but the hardy ſtrength of a robuſt body; his height was uncommon, and acquired him the name of THE TALL. His eyes, his features and complexion, bore a near reſemblance to his amiable mother, and a true nobility of ſoul ſhone forth conſpicuous in his manly ſhape, and graceful geſtures. He was by his father trained up to the exerciſes of a Scythian Prince: None amongſt the Mongalians was a better Mark's-man; none curbed a fierce, unruly horſe, with greater courage; none wreſtled with ſuperior ſkill; and as to ſwimming, none maſtered the cool waves of the Kokonor with more agility. With impatient ardor did he follow when his father purſued the dreadful Tyger into the thicket; and his boſom

ſwelled when the lance of TIMURTASH pierced through the heart of the Monſter. USONG, for ſuch was the name of the young ſon of *Sheheriſtani*, accuſtomed, like the Shongar* to prey, in his early youth, practiſed hunting with unwearied aſſiduity; he laughed at the danger, and the toil to him was paſtime.

TIMURTASH had yet left amongſt his kindred ſome of the offspring of the faithful Chineſe, who, rather than live ſubject to the unlawful, aſſumed power of *Ming*, had choſen to remain the Companions of the fugitive *Iwens*. A wiſe man of this tribe, noleſs ſkilled in the doctrines of *Confucius*†, than careful to practice them, was choſen to form the mind of the young Prince. Eagerly did USONG imbibe doctrines ſo conformable to his own noble ſentiments; he was perſuaded by his own nature, that to be juſt, bounteous, and generous, rendered thoſe happy who were ſo. His heart panted after the nobleſt glory, and to be the beſt, the wiſeſt, the moſt righteous amongſt thoſe with whom he was educated, was his ſole ambition. He applied himſelf to the embelliſhment of his intellec-

* An eſteemed bird of prey of the North.

† Or agreeable to the Eaſtern pronunciation, Kong-fu-zee.

tual

tual part; prompted thereto by the very ſame paſſion which induced him to practice the exerciſes of the body. He read part of *Shuking*,* and wrote the neateſt characters; his ſoul was capacious enough to comprehend the virtues and the excellencies of ſeveral ages, and of ſeveral Nations.

UNDER the encouragement of his admiring Parents had USONG now attained the age of fourteen; but his ſtrength had arrived at greater maturity than what his age ſeemed to allow. He was inflamed with a deſire to acquire himſelf glory and experience in real war, though he had little hopes of obtaining the conſent of his affectionate father. But his Mongalians were then preparing to make an irruption into Shenſi: the choiceſt body of them fitted themſelves out for this expedition againſt the ancient enemies of the *Tſhengides*, and USONG ſecretly reſolved to aſſiſt in this Expedition. He accordingly furniſhed himſelf with horſes, arms, and a diſguiſe, and took nobody with him but his Confidant *Sherin*, who, in mental and bodily endowments, reſembled him more than any of the Mongalians; but was ſome-

* *Shuking* is one of the canonical books of the Chineſe, wherein the wiſe counſels of the ancient Emperors and their Miniſters, have been recorded by *Confucius*.

what more advanced in years. USONG pretended to hunt in a field moſt remote from the road to Shenſi: He watched the time when the Mongalians lay a day's journey from his father's tents, and overtook them on the way. They received him as a Mongalian of a friendly Tribe, and they marched on whilſt the afflicted TIMURTASH cauſed his loſt ſon to be ſought after with diligence through all the weſtern Countries.

THE Scythians ſwimming through the Yellow River* avoided thereby the great wall. They ravaged the Country of a rich People, who, living unapprehenſive of danger, followed their traffic in all ſecurity. They acquired an immenſe booty; but an avenging Enemy awaited them.

* The Yellow River in China is ſo called, becauſe the earth it ſweeps away with it, eſpecially in great rains, gives it that colour. It riſes at the extremity of the mountains, that bound the Province of Set-ſhuen in the Weſt; from thence, throwing itſelf into Tartary, it flows for ſome time on the outſide of the great wall, re-enters China, and, after a courſe of above ſix hundred leaguee, diſcharges itſelf into the Eaſtern Ocean, not far from the mouth of the Kiam. This River has formerly cauſed great deſolation in China, and they are ſtill obliged, in certain places, to confine the waters by banks of great ſtrength; it is very broad and rapid, but of no extraordinary depth. T. N.

LIE-

LIEWANG was Zongtu* in Setſhuen and Shenſi, a wiſe and juſt Governor; who, with the choiceſt excellencies of the heart, poſſeſſed the greateſt ſhare of human Wiſdom: and was a worthy Deſcendant of *Confucius*. He attempted not to oppoſe the Mongalians in their firſt fury, but waited the time when they ſhould, in the greateſt ſecurity, and with that negligence which is the conſequence thereof, return with a heavy luggage to their Deſarts. He choſe a narrow vale betwixt woody hills, through which road the Scythians muſt paſs: He ſummoned his veteran troops, who in this Province are more couragious than in the ſouthern parts of China; he took with him a great number of thoſe Warriors, who, by the force of a kindled duſt could ſend forth leaden balls out of iron barrels; weapons which wound far more mortally than the arrows of the Scythians, which the Mongalians were not acquainted with, and to which they had nothing to oppoſe of the like murderous nature. He alſo carried great metal tubes along with him, drawn by horſes, which iſſued forth heavy balls of ſtone with ſuch force, that no wall could reſiſt them; and which, among crouded troops, cauſed a ravaging deſtruction.

* An Office ſimilar to that of a Viceroy.

THE Mongalians, who deſpiſed their Enemy, marched without apprehenſion into the fatal vale, where deſtruction was prepared to meet them. They paſſed very ſlowly through the valley, becauſe of the many priſoners, and the rich baggage, with which their train was incumbered. On a ſudden the mountains reſounded the report of the deſtructive fire-arms; death poured down from the hills, and out of the buſhes, upon the valiant Scythians; they did not ſo much as enjoy the ſatisfaction to ſee their Enemy, and to die fighting. USONG, whom a natural, inſtinctive courage, had led to the moſt dangerous poſt in the rear, encouraged ſuch of his friends as were near him; "make haſte, cried he, retreat out of "the vale of murder, and fall upon the Enemy's "back. A few of the braveſt followed him; and he ruſhed upon the Life-guard of the Zongtu. The young Hero cleared himſelf the way with his ſword, and preſſed with ardour forward towards the gilded Dragon, the Standard of the Viceroy; he aimed at deſtroying the General himſelf; and determined, ſword in hand, to clear the way for a retreat through the ſlaughtered Enemies. But the number of the Prince's intrepid followers were too ſmall; they were ſurrounded;

a

a party of them met death on the pikes of the Chineſe, and the reſt were diſarmed.

USONG had approached ſo near to the Zongtu, that this Viceroy could diſtinguiſh his features. LIEWANG took him for a Stranger from ſome remote part of the Weſt; and could not forbear admiring his ſhape. He ordered the handſome youth to be taken priſoner; and that order was eaſily executed, ſince USONG had fallen under his ſlain horſe. He, together with his friend and other priſoners, was carried to the metropolis of Shenſi, the immenſe Singan, which in greatneſs yields not to the Imperial Seat at Pekin. LIEWANG was received as the Deliverer of his Country; and the People, who had before admired him for many virtues, diſcovered now, by his victorious prudence in war, new reaſons to revere him.

THE tumult of buſineſs had hitherto hindered the Viceroy from ſpeaking to the impriſoned Stranger; he had only ſent to enquire of him his Country, and why he had made an inroad into the peaceable Empire? USONG was acquainted with the peculiar Laws of China; to ſay he was an *Iwen* was pronouncing a ſentence of death againſt himſelf. He did not, therefore, undeceive the Viceroy, but ſuffered himſelf to be miſtaken for

for a Mongalian, of a far remote and better ſhaped Tribe. He had his place aſſigned him with the Gardener of the Palace, where, at the ſame time, he had the care of the foreign and rare Animals, which the Viceroy kept chiefly for the amuſement of his daughter.

LIOSUA was ten years of age, the only daughter, and ſole delight of her wife father. She had very early loſt her mother, a Princeſs of the Imperial houſe of *Ming*. The ſoul of LIEWANG was wrapt up in this agreeable child: Her ſhape was ſtrikingly handſome, but her mind! accompliſhed even to her father's utmoſt wiſhes. Mildneſs, magnanimity, and filial love, were in LIOSUA, attended with a poignant wit, and the moſt ſtriking brilliancy of the underſtanding. She applied herſelf to the ſciences of the Empire, and filled her mind with the wiſe maxims of the ancient Sages; the Demi-gods; the firſt Inventors of Order and Laws amongſt Men!*

THOSE of the vanquiſhed Mongalians who eſcaped, returned mean while in great dejection back to the Mountains of Ulan; and, from the account they gave of USONG, TIMURTASH had no reaſon but to ſuppoſe the

* Yao, Shung, Yu, Wuwang, Wenwang.

worſt

worſt of calamities had befel him in the death of his noble ſon. USONG had no opportunity to give his Parents notice of his preſervation: To have any acquaintance with a Deſcendant of the *Iwens*, would have been death to HIM, and even to the Meſſenger himſelf. The young Prince, therefore, was as reſigned to his fate as patience would permit. His natural vivacity of mind rendered his menial condition ſupportable, and his curioſity was agreeably gratified by the flowers and animals he had the care of. But he continued not long in this humble ſtation.

BEHIND the Viceroy's Palace, there were gardens of a vaſt extent; on an adjacent hill* there ſprung abundance of water, ſome of which was collected into ponds, that ſerved as reſervoirs for curious fiſh, or handſome feathered water-birds; and then flowed in meandring ſtreams through the foreſt, which was planted with a diverſity of trees, here ſingle, there in ſmall clumps, and then in regular rows. A vale, ſurrounded with overgrown hills, had a chryſtal ſtream gliding ſmoothly along, at the end of it was an artificial rock, through which a ſecret

* The Gardens in China are laid out in this manner.

wind-

winding paſſage led to another garden, at the extremity of this was a thicket, that ſeemed inacceſſible, and yet was open to a foot-path, which led towards a temple erected on the hill.

LIOSUA had ſome favourite gold fiſh, in the garden neareſt her own apartments, which had been taught by her to fetch their food from her hands. Her guileleſs youth took pleaſure in rendering dumb creatures happy, that could return no thanks. She was amuſing herſelf with this innocent paſtime, when accidentally ſtooping ſomewhat too low, ſhe fell into the pond, and on a ſudden was covered by the water. Her Attendants cried out, and haſtened as faſt as the mutilated feet of the Chineſe women will allow, towards the fatal pond; but they would have arrived too late, had not USONG been more ſwift of foot.

HE was in an adjoining thicket, buſied in endeavouring to catch an eſcaped Pheaſant, whoſe glowing colours diſcovered her from under the leaves, when he heard the ſhrieks of women; and, notwithſtanding the garden was ſet apart for the ſole amuſement of LIOSUA, and that every male was prohibited entrance therein, yet USONG's impetuoſity allowed him no time for conſideration;

ration; he leaped over the fences, flung himſelf into the pond, and, in the twinkling of an eye, was on ſhore with the ſaved Princeſs.

SHE was ſenſeleſs, and he obliged to claſp her in his arms to lift her up. He beheld her languiſhing, half-cloſed eyes; and ſaw a moſt engaging ſweetneſs, which fear itſelf could not eclipſe, diffuſed over her mild and placid countenance. She fetched at length a ſigh, whilſt he was ſtriving to recover her, and caſt a friendly glance at her Deliverer, intermixed with a bluſhing modeſty, which gave to her pale cheeks a faint roſe colour. USONG delivered her ſafe into the hands of applauding Waiting-women, and withdrew with the greateſt ſpeed; for he knew the cuſtoms of the Country, and the rigid jealouſy wherewith the Laws watch over Virgin Modeſty.

THE Lady was conveyed to her apartment, and into the arms of her affectionate father. LIEWANG was a rigid obſerver of the Cuſtoms of his Country, but had a ſoul too noble to revenge a ſlight offence on a ſtranger, who had plunged himſelf into open danger, in order to ſave what alone rendered the life of the Viceroy ſupportable. He ſent for USONG, and thus accoſted him: "Young

"ſtranger,

"ſtranger, I am infinitely beholden to thee, "in what manner can I reward thee?"

Usong ſurveyed the Viceroy with that noble dignity which he derived from his illuſtrious birth, and pauſed for a while. His lively mind inſtantly repreſented to itſelf on the one hand Freedom, and the joyful ſight of his Parents; and, on the other, the particular advantage of perfecting himſelf in the ſuperior knowledge of the Chineſe. The lovely image of the young Princeſs likewiſe gave a ſecret biaſs to his determination, and fixed the reſult. "Illuſtrious Sir, anſwered "he, I am a Foreigner, yet not a total "Stranger to the wiſdom of this Country; "but I am young: Grant, therefore, that "I may be faithfully inſtructed in the Laws, "the Cuſtoms, and Sciences of an Empire, "which has, during ſo many ages, been the "center of œconomical order, and national "felicity."

The many advantages which the opulent, the populous, the well cultivated, the ſcientific, and wiſe Empire of China enjoyed over his rude native Country, had not eſcaped the notice of the intelligent youth. He conceived that the minds of his Mongalians were yet uncorrupted, and conſequently, as innocent as Nature's hand had formed them; he ſup-

ſuppoſed their barbariſm entirely owing to the want of uſeful knowledge, and wholeſome inſtitutions; and that they were otherwiſe ſuſceptible of every improvement that could contribute to render them a great and a proſperous Nation, if bleſſed with a wiſe Legiſlator, who knew how to cultivate and poliſh the many excellent qualities that lay concealed within thoſe rough diamonds. "And why may not I be that Benefactor to "my People?" ſuggeſted USONG's heart: not by words, but a quick emotion, far more expreſſive than words, of the ſentimental language of the heart.

"YOUNG Stranger, ſaid the Viceroy, thou "art deſirous of wiſdom, and ſhalt obtain it. "Thou art henceforth FREE; and I will "provide for thy inſtruction."

THE Viceroy's bounty extended itſelf even to the faithful *Sherin*; he too obtained his freedom, that the beloved USONG's wiſhes might all be ſatisfied. The young Prince ſtudiouſly applied himſelf under thoſe excellent Maſters whom the Zongtu aſſigned him, to profit by the wiſdom of the former Sovereigns of China. In the equity of thoſe Princes; in their endeavours to promote the happineſs of their People; in their total diſintereſtedneſs, and in their ſpirit of regu-

regularity; he found a charm which exactly hit the uniſon of his heart. "Such would "have been my opinion; ſo would I have "done;" ſaid USONG within himſelf; he thought nothing arduous that was good, for as yet he knew nothing of thoſe difficulties which a philanthropic mind has to encounter in its endeavours to do good.

THOUGH by the cuſtoms of China USONG was debarred from ſeeing the amiable LIOSUA, yet did ſhe afford the moſt agreeable employment to his heart; he found a thouſand means of opening a kind of acceſs to her; and all her Attendants loving him, for having ſaved their adored Princeſs, they, with pleaſure, promoted his views. Sometimes among the neighbouring hills, or in the gardens of the Nobility, he met with curious flowers, or Nipponian ſhrubs in bloſſom, which he inſtantly conveyed to the Princeſs; ſometimes he ſent her birds of the richeſt plumage, the catching of which had been a part of his Scythian education; ſometimes new poems, which he compoſed when with his Maſters. Being apprized of her birth-day, which throughout the Palace was ſet apart as a great feſtival, he privately faſtened to an obelisk in LIOSUA's garden ſome verſes, wherein

he

he envied the good fortune of Ming,* in whoſe time the Phœnix was born. The young Lady ſmiled, and with a juvenile innocence, courteouſly accepted USONG's oblations.

HOWEVER, he did not forget that he was a Prince, and born to take care of a People. He therefore never omitted being preſent at the Viceroy's Audiences; he admired his conſummate ſagacity in judicial matters; his expertneſs at unravelling thoſe knotty points in which truth is ſo often involved, and his penetration in diſcovering the ſecret clews which led out of ſuch labyrinths. It delighted USONG to obſerve the regulations by which LIEWANG prevented a famine. He perceived his equity and prudence in balancing the Farmer's rights with the profits of the Purchaſer; thus providing that the Peaſant's labour ſhould be reaſonably recompenced, and the neceſſaries of life kept at an equitable price for the poor Artificer. USONG, ſenſible that he could not

* The Imperial Line of the *Tſhengides* was called *Iwen*, and the *Hongwu* Family, which reigned till this preſent Imperial Houſe bore the name of *Ming*. The Chineſe likewiſe have their fabulous *Fongboang*, a Phœnix, concerning which they hold that it is ſeen only during the Reign of good and happy Princes.

always

always enjoy this beſt of ſchools, applied himſelf very aſſiduouſly, to profit by the light of the Viceroy's capacity.

But the Prince was both too young and volatile to have his ardent love remain long concealed. He had ſpent two years at Singan, when his unintermitted efforts, to render himſelf acceptable to the Lady, began to diſpleaſe the moſt ſerious amongſt her female Attendants. He had already preſumed to enter that particular garden where the Princeſs amuſed herſelf; a place ſacred to her alone, to him forbidden ground. He, however, was never at a loſs for palliatives to excuſe his freedom. Amongſt the flowers which he ſent her there were often concealed verſes, containing expreſſions couched in general terms, but ſome ſo characteriſtic, that they were applicable to none but the angelic beauty whom he adored. He every day gave ſhining proofs of a paſſion kindled into the brighteſt flame; each place that his Liosua touched, he conſecrated by ſome ſymbol, expreſſive of his love.

At length the Women thought it their duty to inform the Viceroy of the Stranger's indiſcretion; on which the Sage-chief maturely weighed, on the one hand, what the cuſtoms of the Empire and his honour required;

quired; and, on the other, what was due to USONG's amiable qualities, and important ſervices. And having ſent for the ſon of TIMURTASH, he ſaid to him, "Youth! "the Serpent's ſon courted the Dragon's "daughter, but the Dragon asked him, "where are thy wings?" The memory of *Oguz* and *Tſhengis*, the renown of *Kublai*,* and all the luſtre of his deſcent, crouded at once into USONG's mind; and he anſwered with graceful compoſure, and a manly mein, "The Serpent's ſon had wings, but con-"cealed them." This anſwer diſpleaſed the Sage. "If the Stranger muſt be ſpoken to "in plainer terms, let him remember that the "daughter of the illuſtrious Ming was not "born to live in a Scythian tent. USONG "will be ſenſible of his tranſgreſſion; and "being here to learn the Laws and Manners "of the Empire, he will not, by an illicit "paſſion, deprive himſelf of the opportunity "of inſtruction." The Prince, enraged at this reproof, rent his upper garment; and ſhewing to the Viceroy the yellow girdle, the Enſign of his Imperial Extraction, which he had never yet pulled off, he ſtood in all the dignified Majeſty of an Emperor's injured

* The firſt Chineſe Emperor of the *Iwen* line.

ſon:

ſon. "Surely, ſaid USONG, the ſon of "*Iwen*, the grandſon of *Tſhengis*, has no-"thing to dread from a compariſon with "*Ming!* Order me now for execution; death "I prefer to thy contempt."

LIEWANG loved the youth; and though thunderſtruck with the dangerous diſcovery, yet he declined taking a precipitate reſolution. He ordered USONG, in whoſe cheeks reſentment glowed, to be conducted into an apartment, kindly treated, and carefully guarded. On the enſuing day he again ſent for the Prince, and ſaid to him, with a gravity peculiar to Chineſe Stateſmen, and which frequently ſupplies the place of wiſdom amongſt them, "The young Stranger cannot be ſuf-"fered to remain longer within the Empire; "in protecting him I ſhould commit an infi-"delity againſt the ſon of Heaven:* Nor "can it be permitted to him to return to "his native Country. Fate has doomed "the *Iwens* to deſtruction; but if the Stran-"ger will engage to paſs the remainder of his "life in ſome remote part of the world, the "ſeeds of wiſdom here ſown in his mind, "may, in another Nation, produce luxuriant "fruits."

* The Emperor.

USONG,

USONG, with the magnanimity of a true *Tſhengide*, returned for anſwer, "That "Country will pleaſe me beſt, which is far- "theſt removed from *Ming*'s Throne."

LIEWANG, diſmiſſing the young Prince, writ immediately to the Viceroy of *Quangt-ſhew** thus: "A Foreigner is, for important "reaſons, baniſhed out of our Empire; but "in regard to the proofs he has given of his "virtue, the Zongtu is deſired to ſend this "Stranger away in a ſhip going to the far- "theſt part of the Weſt, giving him what "LIEWANG had ſent with him for his "decent ſubſiſtence."

USONG now ſaw himſelf about to be ſepa- rated for ever from his beloved LIOSUA; and being in the bloom of youth, he could not forbear endeavouring to take the laſt fare- well of his adorable Charmer. He, and his truſty friend *Sherin*, watched every oppor- tunity when the Princeſs would make her appearance in the garden; and USONG had it ſoon in his power to throw himſelf at her feet, juſt near the pond, out of which he had ſaved her from inſtant death. "Daughter "of Heaven,† ſaid he, USONG's virtue, not

* The Province of the Europeans.

† As Grand daughter to the Son of Heaven, the Emperor.

"his extraction, rendered him unworthy of "thee; may the *Tien** reward thy Excel- "lence with a Lover, who has a heart like "mine, and virtues and merit ſimilar to "yours." Here he pauſed; and tears, for the firſt time, moiſtened his ſparkling eyes.

LIOSUA was greatly affected; yet recollecting what the ſeverity of the cuſtoms of her Country required, withdrew, ſaying, "USONG is a ſtranger, and quite unac- "quainted with our manners; this, in ſome "degree, pleads his excuſe." But while ſhe wsa ſlowly advancing towards her women, ſhe could not totally ſuppreſs her dejection at quitting an amiable Prince, who, on that very ſpot, had, at the hazard of his own life, ſaved hers. She once more looked back towards him; and her eyes, with an expreſſive languor, ſilently beſpoke that ſhe left him with regret.

IT was a language which USONG underſtood; his heart had learned it from Nature. He roſe, and, between rapture and deſpair, haſtened into the grove.

THE day came when he was to depart with his faithful *Sherin*: He found in *Quantſhew* great riches in gold, ſilks, and all the

* God.

curious

curious works of Chineſe Artiſts. Likewiſe among LIEWANG's gifts were the *Shuking*, and the five ſacred books of the ancient Sages; and in one of them he found this letter from the Viceroy:

"Now as I ſhall no longer behold the "noble USONG's face, I exhort him, as a "father would a ſon who was leaving him "for ever, ſtedfaſtly to adhere to the love of "Wiſdom and of Virtue; USONG has talents "which may fit him to be one day a moſt "excellent Prince, and, if he ſpares no pains "to cultivate ſuch endowments, he may "expect that Heaven will make him inſtru-"mental in promoting its goodneſs."

USONG, with a melancholy gratitude, ſighed; and kiſſed this bequeſt of a Benefactor, who was father to his dear LIOSUA. No obſtruction, or delay, retarded the voyage; and the Merchant landed him, with his treaſure, at Atſhin, as no ſhips from the Empire went farther. The young Prince had employed his ſolitary hours, whilſt on board the veſſel, in forming a plan for his future life; he propoſed to viſit Countries for improvement; Nations where Wiſdom was in repute, and whoſe Governments conſulted the happineſs of their Subjects. He

had at Singan, and, at preſent, by peruſing the books of the Ancients, and by the influence of LIEWANG's ſhining example, conceived a ſtrong deſire of qualifying himſelf to promote the good of mankind. This, next to his ardent paſſion for the exemplary LIOSUA, was the only emotion he felt.

ATSHIN was at that time under a martial and ſanguinary King. USONG had in China admired how lenity ſoftened the rigour of the Law, and pleaded for the preſervation of all but incorrigible Offenders. Here ſcarcely a day paſſed but he ſaw ſome innocent Victims, who fell under the Monarch's diſpleaſure, by the mere command of the King, thrown to the Elephants, or cut off by the Sabre, without a form of Trial, or being permitted to make a defence. "Such, "ſaid USONG, would be the reign of a Tiger, "if Heaven could permit Tigers to reign." He found that this Country, though not unlike, yet contained none of the ornamentary decorations of Art to be met with in China; no canals, cut by the hand of induſtry, for inland navigation; no cultivated mountains, with ſteps to aſcend their lofty ſummit; no magnificent buildings, diſplaying the wealth of the inhabitants; no Seminaries of learning: He found nothing here but Foreſts

Foreſts and Huts, inhabited by crouching ſlaves.

In the houſe of the Chineſe Merchant, with whom the Maſter of the Quangtſhew veſſel had left him, Usong found a Mollah, a reputedly holy Hadſhi*, lately returned from making a pilgrimage to Mecca, and who underſtood ſomething of the Chineſe language. The young Prince's figure was prepoſſeſſing to the greateſt degree; and his courteous and noble deportment, gained the hearts of all who ſaw him. The Mollah being informed by Usong that he was in queſt of a Country where the inhabitants were happy, and where Virtue was held in reverence, ſaid to him: Young Man, all theſe eaſtern Countries are under the dominion of tyrannical Princes; and without any other law than the will of the Sovereign. But far in the weſt lies a kingdom called Miſr†, ſimilar, in ſome reſpects, to China, but far more martial. Like Taiſing it is interſected by various canals; a river, flowing from the ſouth, fills them on a ſtated day; and thus waters, fertilizes, and diſpenſes its bleſſings

* A Title given to thoſe who have performed the Pilgrimage to Mecca.

† The eaſtern name of Egypt.

through the country; Egypt, as far as the eye can extend, is a delicious garden, where all bountiful Nature, with little assistance from Art, produces the seed thirty fold. Stately palm-trees embellish its thickets, whilst an extensive navigation fills its Ports with the manufactures of the East, and the merchandize of ingenious Nations lying still farther westward.

But Misr has still a greater advantage: Merit alone makes Princes there, and from Princes raises them to further sovereignty. The Empire is divided amongst twenty-four Princes, of whom not one succeeds his father by hereditary right; they are all the sons of their actions; he whose merit excels the rest is elected to the vacant throne: He is always a Foreigner, and generally a Slave*, whom obedience or necessity has trained up to action, and the school of experience has rendered thoroughly capable. Misr is the land of Merit, and the temple of well-rewarded Virtue.

* This has been denied; but in Usong's time, and until the overthrow of the Government of the Mammelukes, the throne was conferred only on Slaves; and under the Ottomans this Law continued in force with regard to the Beys, who preside over Egypt, subordinately to the Pacha. Ali-Bey, the present Soldan, was a Slave.

USONG was pleaſed with the Mollah's advice, and, as ſoon as the ſeaſon permitted, he embarked for Dſhidda, with ſome Mahometans, who undertook a pilgrimage to Mecca; and the Mollah, his friend, went himſelf a ſecond time to viſit the Prophet's tomb. The leiſure of a long voyage gave USONG an opportunity of acquainting himſelf with the Arabian language; under the Mollah's inſtruction he read the Koran with pleaſure; for, by the light of Nature, he was led to acknowledge one indiviſible Supreme Being, and of whom he thought the Chineſe Philoſophers ſpoke too ſeldom, too coldly, and even at random. "The *Tien*, ſaid he, "is the God of the Empire, and Emperor "only*; whereas here I find a God, who is "mine and every man's protector." But the Miracles, which in China USONG had not ſo much as heard off, though intervoven in the doctrine of the Bonzes, but rejected with ſcorn and abhorrence by the Philoſophers, prevented him from giving his aſſent to the Koran.

AT Dſhidda USONG parted from his Mahometan friend the Mollah; and finding there a ſhip which carried him to Suez, he

* The Emperor alone ſacrifices to the Tien.

arrived at Alkahirah* juſt at the time when the Soldan, with all the pomp of ſovereignty, gave orders for opening the ſluices, which admitted the waters from the Nile. The Princes of the empire, together with the Commanders of the Circaſſian legions, appeared in the moſt gorgeous uniforms, and on the fineſt Arabian horſes. All Egypt joined in celebrating its chief feſtival, and the general joy expreſſed itſelf in a thouſand different paſtimes. USONG himſelf thought there was ſomething noble in a man's commanding a vaſt kingdom to be fertilized; he at firſt believed that Egypt actually enjoyed thoſe advantages which the Mollah had aſcribed to it; but when he ſaw the Town of Alkahirah confuſed and uncleanly; when he compared the diſorderly ſtate of Egypt with the ſtrict policy of the Chineſe, obſerving alſo the haughtineſs of the Circaſſian ſoldiery, who treated the people as ſlaves; when he beheld ſo many factious tumults amongſt the reigning Mammelukes themſelves; Beys ſurprized and murdered by his competitors:——When USONG ſaw further that theft was general, and that the will of the powerful was the only law, his

* Cairo.

noble

noble ſoul was ſickened at the ſight. "Alas, "ſaid he ſighing, is it then in the dominions "of Ming, and the Empire of China only "that Wiſdom and Virtue are to be found!"

He quickly perceived during his ſtay in Miſr, that violence, not merit, led to affluence and grandeur; and that, among the Princes, he only had attained to ſovereignty, whoſe ſabre, dipt in blood, had cut a way to the throne by the murder of his brethren. USONG's generous ſoul, enamoured with the love of equity and goodneſs, hated a country wherein neither prevailed.

THE young Hero cultivated an acquaintance with the foreigners of different nations whom commerce occaſioned to reſort to Egypt, deſirous of knowing whether among the weſtern Empires there were any wherein Wiſdom and Virtue flouriſhed; he frequented thoſe places where Merchants of all countries reſorted, to recruit their ſpirits with an innocent cordial, refreſhing to the mind when fatigued with buſineſs: and *there* he fell into converſation with a Venetian Nobleman, who had come to Alkahirah with his uncle, the Envoy from that Republic. His name was *Catharin Zeno*.

BESIDES USONG's ſtriking perſon and agreeable deportment, the diſtance of the

place from whence he came excited curioſity; a native Inhabitant of China, as he was accounted, being to an European a ſingular phenomenon.

USONG, converſing in the Arabick language with *Zeno*, about the political conſtitutions of the Weſtern Empires, ſaid, "Is "then the worthy *Zeno* not of a country "where learning is reſpected, and the worth "of virtue known? From his behaviour "one would infer that there are nations "very unjuſtly termed Barbarians." *Zeno*, ſmiling, replied, "If the Orientals account "us rude and uncultivated, we return the "compliment to them." One of us, *Marc Pol*, has related ſomething of the magnanimity and wiſdom of *Kathai*, but the Europeans in general look upon themſelves as the only civilized people: And, certainly, when USONG ſhall become acquainted with the Laws, the Police, the Œconomy, the Religion, the Arts, and military diſcipline of Venice, he will allow us to have many real advantages over the People among whom we both now reſide.

ZENO's native city excited the young Prince's curioſity; and he, in return, gratified his new friend's inquiſitiveneſs, with accounts of China. The wares and merchandize which the veſſels of Venice, that free city, brought

to

to Alexandria, indicated to USONG the flouriſhing ſtate of arts; the ſhips were both better built, and more dextrouſly worked than in China, and taſte and contrivance appeared in all their furniture and utenſils.

As the term of the Embaſſy was expired, USONG was eaſily prevailed upon to accompany the noble *Zeno* and his Uncle, to Venice. He applied himſelf, with his uſual ardour, to the Italian language, and to acquire a knowledge of its characters; and his voyage being much retarded by frequent calms, he ſo improved his time, that, ſoon after his arrival at Venice, he was able to expreſs himſelf in that language with fluency.

THIS ſuperb city was then on the very ſummit of proſperity; not Tyre itſelf ever acquired ſuch a ſuperiority in naval commerce. Under the Doge *Thomas Mocenigo*, but a little before USONG's arrival, Venice had a fleet of three thouſand ſhips, with thirty-ſix thouſand ſeamen; its riches ſcarce admitted of any calculation; its annual exports amounted to ten millions of ſequins, the bare freight of which brought her in two millions. The whole trade of India was carried on by the way of Alexandria to Venice, and the Venetians were, in effect, the general merchants for all the weſtern nations.

USONG was quite amazed at ſeeing the lofty towers of Venice gradually ariſing out of the waves. Larger Cities he had indeed ſeen in China; but the building of a capital in the middle of the ſea, and a capital too the miſtreſs of many kingdoms, appeared ſomething ſupernatural. He found more ſolidity in the ſtone buildings, a greater ſplendor in the temples, better ſtored arſenals, and a religion of more ſolemnity than the puerile idolatry of the Bonzes; and of more devotion than the frigid worſhip paid in China to progenitors.

BUT what perplexed the young Hero moſt, was the political conſtitution. The idea of a Republic was yet unknown in deſpotic China: a plurality of Gods was believed; but that there ſhould be more than ONE Sovereign, was thought utterly impoſſible. Nobles governing together with an equal ſhare of power, and the great depending on their inferiors, ſeemed to USONG a phenomenon from the region of ſpirits; and, like a viſionary tale, brought from ſome other orb. His aſtoniſhment ſtill the more increaſed on finding that all the Countries of the weſtern Empire had been free, and that the Princes were perſons of their own chuſing; he could not diſcover the reaſon

why

why a ſyſtem of Government, unknown in the other parts of the world, ſhould particularly obtain in theſe countries; nor was he able to comprehend how unanimous orders, and correſpondent meaſures, could take place among many governors, inveſted with an equal ſhare of authority. He ſaw two nations, the ſmaller of which governed, whilſt the greater was in ſubjection, and never could acquire the ſuperiority.

NOTWITHSTANDING his deep-rooted prejudices againſt ariſtocracy, yet he at Venice found it perfectly conſiſtent with the public welfare. The People ſeemed rich, they lived in commodious houſes, and their labour was by no means exceſſive; the Arts flouriſhed as in China, and every thing pertaining to uſe, pleaſure, and convenience was here manufactured in abundance: The Nobles exerciſed their ſuperiority with exemplary moderation; the laws were in force againſt them; and their power, when guilty, never ſcreened them from puniſhment. Here he ſaw nothing of that ſervility, that obſequious homage, which in China men pay to men; in Venice the ſcourge was not the ſceptre of the law.

USONG ſoon perceived the Military to be on a better footing here than in the ſo much boaſted

boaſted dominions of Ming: The ſoldiers appeared more orderly, handled their arms with more expertneſs, and obſerved a more rigid diſcipline. Amongſt them he alſo found an incentive to valour, of which the eaſtern troops are ſtrangers, even in idea; a paſſionate love of glory, which made the European forces prefer death to ſhame; for he learnt, that in ſome nations to fly from the foe is ever accounted the very worſt of crimes.

He was given to underſtand that famine, a calamity ſo common in China, was little known, and but very ſeldom experienced at Venice; that its political conſtitution had not ſuffered the ſmalleſt alteration for ſome centuries paſt; that the generality of the European Monarchs enjoy their thrones in peace to the lateſt generations, whilſt in China a mere factious incendiary, a *Tſhu*, frequently depoſed the reigning family, and bequeathed the throne of *Tſhengis* and *Kublai* to his plebeian deſcendants.

The more Usong became convinced that the weſtern manners, laws, and principles, contained the ſeeds of public good, of peace, utility, and ſafety, and were withal incentives to noble atchievments and generous actions; the more aſſiduous was he to acquire a know-

ledge

ledge of thoſe advantages which he could not but allow the Europeans enjoyed.

ZENO repreſented to the inquiſitive Prince, that the deſpotiſm of the Eaſt debaſed the minds of the people, where the reputation of all noble actions is aſcribed to the Monarch; where, by the Sovereign's diſdainful glance, the higheſt ſubject is immediately laid in the duſt; where contemptuous puniſhments are arbitrarily inflicted, there all deſire of ſignalizing one's ſelf, by great exploits, flags and languiſhes. Excluded from the path of glory, a people ſoon learn to bend under the yoke, and having nothing to hope, and every thing to fear, they habituate themſelves to curry favour with the great by adulation; and inſtead of honour, of which they deſpair, they ſubſtitute a love of gain, in which they are permitted to indulge, and voluptuous pleaſures which they purchaſe.

THE ſeverity of the government in moſt Eaſtern countries damps all ſpirited ſentiments that ſhould elevate the people's hearts. In China the firſt Emperors ſought out virtue and capacity, in order to place them near the throne; they have, even to the excluſion of their own ſons, reſigned the ſceptre to a more worthy perſon. The Emperors, for a conſiderable time, willingly adopted

adopted the ſubjects' advice, acknowledged their own errors, and left to a faithful ſervant the reputation of having counſelled them in their beſt actions; but that even in China the former ſimplicity of the Sovereign was perverted by Sycophants. USONG confeſſed it——Worthleſs Eunuchs were the diſtributors of rewards, the oppreſſions of the principal Mandarins were overlooked, and the yoke rendered thereby more galling to the ſuffering people. The illuſtrious examples of virtuous Emperors, and the perſuaſive eloquence of antient Sages, do ſtill ſometimes prevail in a Prince's heart, and induce him to place his ſole happineſs in the welfare of his country. But the evil has taken deep root, and the hearts of the people are no longer ſuſceptible of noble ſentiments:

AMONG the weſtern nations the natural equality of mankind has been longer preſerved; the people of thoſe countries choſe their Kings, as leaders, ſkilled in military affairs, but veſted in them no greater authority. Every member had a property in the ſervice he rendered to ſociety, and none diſputed with him the glory of the atchievement. The applauſe of thouſands, and the beſt applauſe of all, the eſteem of his fellow-citizens, rewarded every perſon of merit; whereas the

envious

envious deſpot arrogates to himſelf all praiſe, as an incenſe due only to the Gods and him. Unaccuſtomed to ſuffer inſults, a free people entertain the keeneſt ſenſe of ſhame; they dread it more than death, ſurviving under reproach, being to them a life of the moſt exquiſite miſery.

"But how comes it, ſaid Usong, that free States aroſe in the Weſt; deſpotic governments in the Eaſtern countries?"

"By what I know of the Hiſtory of the World, replied *Zeno*, the inhabitants of moſt countries, who, by reaſon of the ſcarcity of aliments, live every where diſperſed, have neither Sovereigns nor Magiſtrates. Under the north-pole nations have been diſcovered; whoſe ſky is, as it were, of iron; their cold, ſterile earth, like ſtone or ice; and their only ſuſtenance is contained in a boiſterous ſea. Theſe people are ſtrangers to ſubordination, and every kind of magiſtracy; they ſtand in no need of laws or puniſhments, having ſeldom any contention with each other; they poſſeſs all things in common, and, like the brutes, from whom they differ little, they live a ſavage, unſocial life, without government, or civil policy.

In cold countries, however, where hunting is followed, mankind herd together; and, from a fear of ferocious beaſts, form ſocieties, for the purpoſe of ſelf-defence. Theſe nations are likewiſe FREE, and all members of the ſociety upon a level with each other; their minds being inured to every fatiguing hardſhip, are ſtrangers to fear; and, diſdaining compulſion, they never truſt their natural liberties in the hands of tyrants. They chooſe a leader, when compelled to it by neceſſity; they entruſt him with a limited power, which ceaſes with the neceſſity that gave it birth. Upon theſe principles all European governments were originally founded.

In the more fertile Eaſtern countries, where a few acres furniſh ſubſiſtence for many families, mankind live nearer together; and here it was where the firſt cities were founded. Property here being more valuable, diſputes between individuals and communities became more frequent; violent paſſions in theſe hot climates prompted the inhabitants to commit crimes and exceſſes; jealouſy and revenge renting aſunder the bands of ſociety, required more forcible reſtraints: Hence Kings aroſe, intruſted with executive power; the momentaneous

taneous exertion of which was neceſſary to ſtop the ſudden evils, and counteract the pernicious effects of the diabolic paſſions. But once armed with a delegated power, they ſoon acquired an unlimited ſovereignty over the Orientals; thoſe children of timidity, whoſe limbs not being braced by a cold atmoſphere, and being withal unaccuſtomed to that labour without which the northern nations cannot ſubſiſt, amongſt them firſt were ſeen hereditary and arbitrary Monarchs; the abject people are accuſtomed to the yoke, and never learnt even the name of Liberty from their ſervile anceſtors.

USONG daily improved in knowledge the more eaſily, as now he could expreſs himſelf fluently in the language of the country; and making ſeveral excurſions by ſea in the gulph of Venice, it gave him much pleaſure to obſerve the quick diſpatch wherewith the Captain's orders were executed. "HERE, ſaid he, "is ſeen the origin and beneficial effect of un-"diſputed power; it becomes neceſſary, where "the leaſt heſitation to obey might plunge "the whole Society in ruin."

OBSERVING attentively the Venetian army about to march againſt the Duke of Milan, USONG entered as a volunteer. He was ſur-

ſurprized to ſee how vaſtly the Europeans excelled the Chineſe in the uſe of fire-arms, though but lately known amongſt them. This advantage, ſaid *Zeno* to his Friend, is alſo in conſequence of liberty, and of a paſſion for glory; this it is which gave birth to Arts; by this they flouriſh, whilſt each Artiſt emulates and ſtrives to outvie his brethren. In China it is far otherwiſe; the ſon trudging in the ſteps of his father, and never conceiving that any thing can be diſcovered beyond what his anceſtors knew, he tranſmits, unimproved to his ſon, the art juſt as he received it from the hands of his father.

THE evenneſs of the European ranks; the order obſerved in their halts and marches; the ſtrictneſs of their diſcipline, and the different degrees of power deſcending undiminiſhed from the commanders in chief to the private ſoldier; their patient courage in aſſaults, and voluntary alacrity in the moſt dangerous attacks; all this ſo tranſported the gallant USONG with rapturous admiration, that, compared to Europeans, his Mongalians, with all their valour, appeared to him as animals, whom Nature only had armed, and the Chineſe as ſlaves, whom you might arm with every thing but courage.

THE

THE Police alſo, and adminiſtration of juſtice, appeared to USONG not inferior to that of the Chineſe. "Here, ſaid he, ho-"nour reſtrains the Judge from giving unjuſt "decrees, as his conduct would not eſcape "cenſure, or his memory reproach. "Whereas in China, one virtue only pro-"cures to a Judge the repute of being honeſt "and equitable: LIEWANG, indeed, was "juſt, but ſeldom is it that heaven favours "a country with a LIEWANG, and daily "does it afflict mankind with venal Man-"darins."

USONG farther began to comprehend how unanimity could prevail in an aſſembly of Nobles equal in power, all agreeing to ſubmit to the reſolution of the majority. He perceived that ſuperiority, under free colleagues in adminiſtration, is to be acquired only by a ſuperiority of talents; and that thouſands will never ſubmit their opinions to an individual, unleſs convinced by his arguments, or charmed by his eloquence: and this alſo affords an incitement to endeavour at excellencies, as the road not only to Honour, but Power and Authority.

BUT *Zeno* himſelf confeſſed, with ſome concern, to his ſagacious friend, that theſe advantages would vaniſh, ſhould ever the Nobles

Nobles be reduced to a ſmaller number. A free State is happy only ſo long as its rulers are reciprocally independent, and connected by no other tye than the public good. In a numerous aſſembly of equal Nobles, the particular attachments of conſanguinity and friendſhip can be of no conſiderable detriment; they influence only a few, and the great majority of independants eaſily fruſtrate any bad deſigns. But ſhould the numbers of the Nobles be diminiſhed, theſe ſmaller confederacies might modify the reſolutions of the government agreeable to the diſpoſitions of the few, uniting to carry ſome favourite point. Conſanguinity, friendſhip, and the common advantage of the parties leagued together, might form a coaleſcence of power too ſtrong for the independent and impartial Nobles to withſtand; and thus the particular views of ſome powerful Citizens would get the better of the national and public good. "May I, ſaid the virtuous Patriot, never live to ſee that day, when one "Venetian Noble ſhall attempt to promote "any intereſt but that of his country's good!"

The Prince of Kokonor conſtantly employed himſelf in reading, viewing, and comparing; his judgment daily improved, and his knowledge encreaſed: But a war, which broke

broke out between the Republic and the powerful Morad*, called him from Venice.

GEORGE CASTRIOT†, heir to Thomas, Prince of Epirus, was, by his almoſt incredible atchievments, become the Sultan's Favourite. *George* was a real Hero, to whom no perſon of his time could be compared, either for the qualities of his mind, or

* Amurath II.

† Was ſurnamed Scanderbeg; i. e. Alexander Lord, was King of Albania, and one of the greateſt Chriſtian Heroes: He was born in 1404, and was given by his father, along with his three brothers, Roposſe, Stroniſe, and Conſtantine, to Sultan Amurath II. in hoſtage. The three brothers the Sultan made away with by a ſlow poiſon, ſparing George on account of his childhood; and when he grew up, entruſted him with the command of a body of his troops, in which ſtation Scanderbeg, as he is moſt commonly called, diſtinguiſhed himſelf ſo, that he roſe to great favour with the Sultan. His father died in 1432, and Scanderbeg ſeeing Albania in the hands of the Turks, ſo artfully concealed his deſign of recovering his Dominions, that they had not the leaſt ſuſpicion of it; and, after many times defeating them, he compaſſed his end, died at the age of 63, after gaining twenty-two battles: But his ſon was afterwards deprived of the Kingdom of Albania. Scanderbeg uſed his ſcimeter with ſuch ſtrength, that it was ſuppoſed to poſſeſs ſome ſingular virtue, and Sultan Mahomet aſked it of him; but finding nothing extraordinary in it, ſent it back. On which Scanderbeg ſaid, "If I "ſent my ſcimeter to the Emperor, I did not lend "him my arm with it."

the

the ſtrength and activity of his body. Senſible of his legal claim to Epirus, he in a battle deſerted from *Morad*, and wreſted the victory out of his hands. He forced the keeper of the Sultan's ſignet to ſet it to a decree, to deliver up Croya to the Heir of Epirus; and this order he haſtened to execute without delay. He ſucceeded; but *Morad* attacked him with a majority of Veteran Troops, and the Janiſſaries even then were the terror of Nations. The Republic, ſaw the Ottoman power like a thundercloud, which rumbles from afar, daily approaching to diſcharge itſelf in conflagration and ruin. The Venetians thought it prudent to keep this ſtorm from their frontiers; they, therefore, ſent to the valiant *Caſtriot* the ſuccours he demanded, and USONG could not reſiſt the deſire of ſerving under a hero, who had realized even ſuch atchievements as the Poets had only feigned.

THE Campaign was an active one, and *George*'s valiant arm fruſtrated all the advantages the Ottomans might hope for from their numbers and experience. Two young Venetians, attracted not ſo much by USONG's liberality as by his amiable manners, joined him; and, together with the faithful *Sherin*, became afterwards the companions

panions of his travels, and of his atchievements. USONG, with all the fiery ardour of youth, cloſely followed the Prince of Epirus into the very thickeſt of the battle, and felt, with delight, his heart beat ſtrongeſt, when death preſſed upon him on all ſides. Once he ruſhed upon the Sultan himſelf, with an impetuoſity which even the brave Albanians could not equal; but he was ſurrounded, and muſt inevitably have been cut to pieces in the Sultan's preſence, had not that Prince's generoſity equalled his victorious greatneſs.

THUS, for the ſecond time, did the valour and ſtriking features of the *Tſhengide** withhold the fatal ſword that was hovering over his head. *Morad* gave orders to ſpare the youth; and ſending for him after the battle, aſked him why he was an Enemy to a Sultan, who had taken arms only to chaſtiſe a Rebel? For USONG's features ſhewed that he was not an European.

THE Prince bowing reſpectfully: "I was "born, ſaid he, in the uttermoſt boundaries "of the Eaſt, and was travelling to the ex-"tremities of the Weſt, to learn Virtue and

* The Grandſon of *Tſhengis*, the great Conqueror; by the Orientals called Zengis Kan.

"Valour; and both I have now found in "my Conqueror."

MORAD, whoſe heart was as mild as his courage intrepid, ſmiled at the Youth, and aſked him, whether then he would not ſerve a Prince to whom he had aſcribed ſuch excellent qualities? USONG freely confeſſed, that from the Venetians he had experienced the moſt generous treatment; to draw his ſword, therefore, againſt ſuch friends would caſt an indelible ſtain upon his honour.

"WELL then, ſaid *Morad*, but neither "ſhalt thou be dangerous to the Ottomans. "I will ſend thee back into the Eaſt; for "methinks, continued the Sultan ſmiling, "thou haſt learnt to be valiant."

THE Sultan ordered USONG's baggage to be demanded of the Venetian General; and deſired the Prince to embark for Eſcander*, and from thence proceed to Perſia, by the way of Halep.†

USONG could have wiſhed to ſee more European States, and to have acquainted himſelf with the conſtitution of Countries governed by Kings, but he acquieſced in his fate; *Sherin* brought him his baggage, and both,

* Alexandrette, or Scanderoon.

† Aleppo.

by

by the way of Eſcander, arrived at the populous Halep, which is ſituated upon its gently-riſing hills.

Usong, during this ſhort ſtay amongſt the Ottomans in *Morad*'s Camp, had attentively obſerved the increaſing power of their formidable Empire. Under ſix Princes the Turks, from a People ſcarcely known, had become ſovereigns of Aſia-minor, and the eaſtern part of Europe. This aggrandiſement was greatly owing to the valour and wiſdom of their Sultans, moſt of whom had been brave and indefatigable Generals; but *Morad*, in mental excellencies, far ſurpaſſed his Predeceſſors: he was the mildeſt and moſt magnanimous of men, and ſo devoted to tranquility, that his exaltation to the Throne was contrary to the ſecret wiſhes of his heart. He was a ſincere Worſhipper of God. Twice did he deſcend from the Throne, to give himſelf up to the duties of Religion; and twice did the unanimous ſolicitations of his ſubjects, force him again to head his People, who deſpaired of victory, unleſs commanded by *Morad*. He had that cool ſedateneſs which, in the midſt of danger, is ever maſter of itſelf; and equally capable of conducting Troops into the heat of battle,

as of watching a whole Army, directing every attack, as if omnipreſent, improving all advantages, and making the beſt diſpoſitions againſt danger of every kind.

THE Sultans lived conſtantly with their Army, never indulging themſelves in the delights of the Harem*, wherein other Eaſtern Monarchs place their ſupreme felicity. The Ottomans revered in their Princes not only their hereditary Sovereigns, but alſo the braveſt and moſt experienced Generals in the Nation. Every Sultan had his ſons brought up with him in the Camp; and, from their earlieſt infancy, like young lions, they were trained to conteſt and to victory.

But what to USONG's reflecting mind appeared moſt formidable was, the inſtitution and diſcipline of the Janiſſaries; they were ſelected young men, of extraordinary ſtrength and great activity, kept continually exerciſed in military manœuvres. They were prohibited from marrying, excluded from all the labours and occupations of civil life, and even in times of peace, they dwelt only in larger tents. They had, from repeated victories, already contracted that pride which

* Seraglio.

leads

leads again to further victory; conceiving themſelves invincible, no other troops were able to reſiſt them. Of all the troops in thoſe times they were the moſt expert in the uſe of fire-arms, nor was there any Infantry that dared oppoſe them. The Weſtern people, with all their innate courage, were not a match for the fierce Janiſſaries; theſe being the only troops conſtantly kept to the uſe of arms, and not, like the Europeans, enliſted one year and caſhiered the next, but remained Soldiers all their lives. The extraordinary courage of a *Caſtriot*, and the innumerable multitudes of the Timur Cavalry, might obtain one victory from the Ottomans; but the unintermitted diſcipline of the Janiſſaries muſt at length prevail over all other Nations who have recourſe to arms only when neceſſity requires, and lay them aſide when the dangers are over.

USONG deſigned to take ſhipping at Baſora, and travel through Hindoſtan, to thoſe parts where ſome of the *Tſhengides* ſtill reigned. To the braveſt or wiſeſt amongſt them he propoſed offering his ſervice, and his ſucceſs he left to that fate, whoſe ways are unſearchable, and whoſe power mortals cannot reſiſt.

He travelled armed through the vaſt Deſart between Halep and Baſora. He had viewed the City of Palmyra, whoſe very ruins are ſplendid monuments of the ancient pomp and opulence of its Citizens, as well as melancholy veſtiges of the ſavage cruelty of their Conquerors. There the vagrant Arabs pitch their tents, amidſt the ſuperb remains of triumphal arches. Usong travelled all night through the ſultry ſandy waſtes of Arabia, and at Sun-riſe he ſought to repoſe himſelf in an adjacent palm-grove, when at the ſkirt of the wood he perceived a venerable old man, accompanied by a youth of a moſt promiſing aſpect.

Just as the Sun's reſplendent diſk appeared above the eaſtern hills, the two Arabs proſtrated themſelves to the ground; and the old man, with folded hands, and a voice expreſſive of a heart ſtrongly affected, poured forth theſe words:*

"Dread Sovereign of Ages, of Worlds, "and of all Nations! Thou ſendeſtagain the "bleſſed meſſenger of thy goodneſs to pro-"claim thee the author of new bounties to

* Concerning the fervour of the Mahometans in their prayers, vid. Guy's Voy. litera de la Grece. vol. I. p. 416, and II.

the

" the race of Men. Far too reſplendent for
" human eyes is the bright creative ſun; the
" ſource of goodneſs; the fountain of all life,
" the origin of all beauty, and of every
" earthly bleſſing! Perfect emblem of its
" incomprehenſible Creator! O that the
" light of the eternal ſun may irradiate on
" our hearts! O that Mortals may feel thy
" favour to be their only good, and make
" Eternity the ſcope and aim of all their
" actions."

HERE the Emir, for he was a Prince of an Arabian Tribe, and a deſcendent of *Ali*, was interrupted by the cry of ſome Sonnite Bedwins *. Die, exclaimed the blind Zealots, thou Unbeliever, who curſeſt the Prophet's followers †. They were running with their levelled ſpears upon the unarmed Worſhippers, but USONG felt the horror of the murderous deed, and, with the noble impatience of a generous heart, ruſhed with his brave Companions amongſt the Robbers, of whom

* Arabs profeſſing the Sect of Mahometaniſm, held by the Turks. The Bedwins ſtill continue in many cuſtoms and ceremonies uſed in the ages of the Scripture Patriarchs- T. N.

† The followers of Ali curſe Abukeker, Omar, and Othman, as illegal Succeſſors to Mahomet, and for having deprived Ali of his hereditary right.

the moſt intrepid fell, and the others were diſperſed.

THE devout old man ſpread forth his arms towards his Deliverer, and ſaid, "Bleſſed "be God for implanting a ſoul ſo elevated, in "a body ſo beautifully fair." The Youth, who was the Emir's ſon and heir, throwing himſelf at the Hero's feet, poured forth alſo his gratitude in thanks and praiſes.

"ENTER our tent, ſaid the old man, thou "noble inſtrument of the divine goodneſs, that "I may bleſs thee." He moved on, and USONG followed him into a vale, where beſide a ſpring was pitched the black tents of the Emir's Tribe. Every morning this devout man, withdrawing from his retinue, converſed in ſolitude with God; *Haſſan* was his name; and he had ſurvived all the ſubjects who had obeyed his father. Whatever the grateful liberality of the Prince could give, he with joy preſented at the feet of his Deliverer; who declined accepting any other than a ſhort abode with the good *Emir*, whoſe life he had ſaved.

HASSAN's heart overflowed in praiſe of God: "Soon, ſaid he, I hope to ſee him; "and this enlivening thought already raiſes "me above the ſinking earth. Noble

Youth,

" youth, continued he, thou perhaps in the " joyous ſpring-time of life haſt not ſuffici- " ently acquainted thyſelf with thy great " Creator; let the laſt words of a dying " friend ſerve as a recompence for thy bene- " faction."

" GLORY, riches, pleaſure, are the toys of " unexperienced children, and which the " great Father indulges them in as being " ſuch; but they are not always to continue " in this infant ſtate; beyond the grave " another life awaits them, an unchangeable " life, a life without end, whoſe importance " admits not of idle paſtime, but renders " contemptible, all thoſe toys in purſuit of " which earthly Princes trifle away their " years: to gain thy favour, thou ſuperla- " tively excellent Being, is the only wiſdom " here; to know and love thee, to hear and " obey thy word, for this it is that we re- " ceived immortal Spirits, of which the world " is not worthy."

TEARS guſhed from the venerable Emir's eyes, and with him USONG ſympathized. *Haſſan* daily entertained the attentive USONG with diſcourſes on the excellence of virtue, the ineſtimable value of goodneſs, and the felicity enjoyed by the devout. The young Hero found himſelf moved, and without

approving the elevation of Mahomet, he invoked the one only God, and joined with the worſhippers of the ſupreme Being, willingly accepting the name of *Haſſan* as the Son of that good man who taught him a knowledge of his bountiful Creator.

Usong at length continued on his journey. He already perceived from afar, Anah, a long town on both ſides of the Euphrates where the deſart ends, and the earth again appears with thoſe embelliſhments which the induſtry of man improves. Plantations of dates, fields producing rich crops of corn, pleaſant gardens of flowers, and every ſource of abundance, ornaments this noble river.

But the people enjoyed nothing of what bountiful nature afforded them; each day in thoſe unfortunate times, gave birth to many acts of violence. Usong met on the road a grey-headed Emir, tearing his cloaths with all the marks of deſpair. "Alas! "alas! they have raviſhed my daughter "from me, the iſſue of Heroes, the ſpot-"leſs pearl of my family; there they are "dragging her to the bed of polution, to "eternal infamy; whilſt I, poor wretch, "am an eye-witneſs of her diſgrace with-"out being able to ſave her from deſtruc-"tion."

"tion." Thus ſaid the Emir to USONG, who had enquired the cauſe of his grief.

THE grandſon of *Tſhengis*, lifting up his eyes, ſaw on the road leading to the city a cloud of duſt, in the midſt of which he indiſtinctly perceived a camel, whoſe leaders were driving it full ſpeed. USONG, without delay, followed the tract, and ſoon overtook the young Princeſs, who was rending her auburn hair, and imploring help in lamentable accents, as often as ſhe could diſengage her lips from the hands of a ſurrounding troop of Robbers.

THE ſuperiority of numbers rendered the attack extremely dangerous; but USONG, who meaſured not his enterpriſes by his ſtrength, followed implicitly the generous ſentiments of his expanded heart. Like a lioneſs robbed of her whelps, he fell upon the Prince of Anah's ſervants, for they it was who had forcibly carried off the the Emir's daughter, and they were haſtening to deliver her up to the luſt of their Prince, a ſon of one of the powerful *Timur*'s warriors. Being better armed and mounted, beſides having more experience in war, but chiefly owing to his courage taking fire at ſo foul an injury; USONG proved the Victor and ſaved the Princeſs.

SHE was the moſt beauteous charmer his eyes had ever beheld. "Faireſt of "Princes daughters, haſten, ſaid he, to com- "fort thy deſpairing father." He then turned the camel, and the Princeſs, for the firſt time, beholding unveiled a youthful ſtranger, reddened like an opening roſe-bud, and with down caſt eyes, paſſively ſubmitted to the guidance of her deliverer, without venturing ſo much as to thank him for her reſcue.

THEY ſoon returned to the good old man, who, over-whelmed with grief, had reſigned himſelf to lamentation. On viewing his ſoul's beloved, he could ſcarcely credit the reality of his happineſs. "Art thou in- "deed my *Emeta*? and do my eyes, ſaid he, "behold thee undefiled? is thy family un- "diſgraced? and can thy Father's hoary "head deſcend to the peaceful grave with- "out diſhonour?"

"This ſpot, continued he, after recover- "ing from the firſt tranſports of his joy, is "dangerous; follow me therefore, noble "ſtranger, whilſt I convey the regained "darling treaſure of my ſoul to a place of "greater ſecurity." He led USONG into a wood, which from being at firſt thin, thick-ened by degrees, ſo that no path appeared; but

but the Emir knew the winding way which led betwixt the palm-trees to a vale that the wood concealed, and where his tents were pitched.

Emeta hid her baſhful face in her mother's lap; "Forgive, ſaid ſhe, thy Daugh-"ter for being ſeen unveiled; ſhe was in "the hands of Barbarians, ſtrangers to every "kind of decency." The Mother bedewing her Daughter's cheeks with tears of joy, and thus addreſſed her: "Ornament of thy "race, re-enter our retired Hutts, for thou "art ſtill my Daughter."

The noble *Abuſhir*, for ſuch was the Emir's name, had every thing to dread from the Prince of Anah's vengeance and ſuperiority; his own blood boiled with rage, for a provoked Tyger is not more furious than an Arab, when either his honour or his love are attacked. He diſpatched expreſſes to all the Tribes of the Deſart, from Baſora to Aleppo, with this alarming meſſage: "Noble Emirs, will you ſuffer "yourſelves to be robbed of your Honour "and your Daughters; will you ſuffer "your Tribes to be diſgraced?"

The fire which raged in old *Abuſhir*'s boſom, enflamed all the Arabian Princes with equal vengeance; they otherwiſe hated the

the Princes of the Cities, having ſuffered every provocation from them, and the baſis of whoſe ſtrength was a mercenary Militia without any military diſcipline, or any check on their rapine and licentiouſneſs.

THE Emirs, with their dependants, reſorted to the enraged *Abuſhir* in ſuch numbers, as within a few weeks to form a powerful army. *Dſhuneid*, ſon to the venerable *Haſſan*, came likewiſe with a choſen body of men, and rejoiced in extolling to his Brethern, the deliverance which he and his Father owed to the magnanimous USONG. He embraced his friend, for his irreproachable virtue had gained him USONG's affection; and he brought him the grateful *Haſſan*'s benediction.

USONG was not idle among his new acquaintance; his actions, and the nobleneſs which accompanied all his proceedings, obtained him their deſerved eſteem. He exhorted the Arabs to prepare for encountering a foe abſolutely contemptible in every thing but military affairs. As all the inhabitants of the Deſart fight on horſeback, he taught them to form ranks and fall upon the enemy in cloſed files, with their lances leveled; he foreſaw that nothing could withſtand

the

the attack of their ſpirited horſes and formidable ſpears.

THE Prince of Anah was both a plunderer and a voluptuary; he had moſt flagrantly offended the Emir, yet imagined himſelf authoriſed to endeavour at revenge. The object of his inordinate deſires had been forcibly taken from him, and he was accuſtomed to look upon every thing which his ſabre could maſter as his indiſputable property. He aſſembled his own army, and received ſuccours from other Princes who reigned over the diſmembered parts of Perſia, and were like him deſcended from *Timur*'s Commanders.

BOTH armies ſoon met, being in ſearch of each other. USONG prevailed with the Emirs that a choſen body, under his friend *Dſhuneid*, might be concealed behind an eminence on one ſide of the field of battle: It was not an eaſy matter to bring the Arabs to conſent to a ſtratagem.

THE Emirs leading on their Cavalry againſt the enemy in ranks, with looſe bridles and levelled ſpears, ſoon threw them into diſorders; but behind the Cavalry was placed a body of foot, which diſcharged ſuch a fire on the Arabs, as forced them to a confuſed retreat: But *Dſhuneid* at that moment flanking

ing the Infantry, totally routed them with ſcarce any reſiſtance. The action laſted not long, and the ſcattered Arabs rallying, few of the enemy eſcaped, the Arabian horſes excelling all others in ſwiftneſs.

THE Emirs haſtened towards Anah, not with a view of making themſelves maſters of that City, the Arabs never venturing within walls, unleſs to extirpate their enemies: But the predatory Prince of Anah being killed in the battle, the inhabitants came out to meet the Arabs with palm boughs, and every demonſtration of the greateſt joy, praiſing the Conquerors as their Deliverers, for they had groaned under the moſt oppreſſive yoke, neither the property, honour, nor even life of any one having been ſecure under the iron hand of their cruel Chieftain.

ABUSHIR ſeeing the victory compleated, called out, "We Arabs deſire no Cities, yet "let us be thankful; this victory we owe to "the Stranger's councils; he it is who has "ſaved the life and honour of our brethren. "My noble friends, procure yourſelves a "kind neighbour; confer Anah upon him; "can any thing be more glorious to the "Arabs, than thus to reward merit? and can "we confer a greater benefaction upon the "Inha-

"Inhabitants themſelves, than by giving "them a mild and a generous Prince?"

ALL the Emirs ſeconded the aged *Abuſhir*'s propoſal; the donation was confirmed with unanimous plaudits, and USONG was proclaimed Prince of Anah.

THE Emir rejoiced at his friend's elevation; and ſetting no bounds to his gratitude, he deſtined for him the lovely *Emeta*. Arabia could boaſt of nothing more perfect; and USONG was of that age when the magic ſweetneſs of a beauteous eye has the moſt powerful influence over the heart. But on the day when *Abuſhir* was preparing for the battle, *Dſhuneid* happened to ſee the fair *Emeta* hanging about her beloved father's neck a Taliſman *, which was to preſerve him from every danger. From that moment he became paſſionately enamoured with her, and diſcloſed his mind to the noble ſpirited *Tſhengide*; USONG herein acted worthy of himſelf: He uſed all that influence to which the Emir's gratitude entitled him, in behalf of his friend; he obtained *Emeta* for him; and thus, as *Dſhuneid* confeſſed, he ſaved a ſecond time his life.

USONG now took poſſeſſion of his Dominions; and recollecting the wiſe LIEWANG's

* A ſuperſtition which the Arabians of all ages have obſerved.

laſt

laſt words, he looked upon Anah as a trial from heaven, affording him an opportunity of ſhewing whether he was worthy to reign. On entering Sovereignty, with ſuch diſpoſitions, is a certain preſage of a praiſe-worthy Adminiſtration.

He was indefatigable to find out the wiſeſt and moſt experienced of his ſubjects; he conſulted the ſentiments of the heads of every Tribe; he aſſembled all who were famous for their virtues; he diſcourſed with them, and, by proper queſtions, ſounded their ſentiments: And what he learnt from them, together with his own obſervations, he entered in a book, thus entitled, *Of the Worthies.* On ſuch as diſtinguiſhed themſelves he at firſt beſtowed ſome temporary employment, and, as he kept a watchful eye on their conduct, if they anſwered his expectation, he promoted them to a more permanent Poſt.

He ſelected his Judges out of the moſt capable perſons of Anah, but daily attended the Court in perſon; he frequently deſired an elucidation of points in law; heard the objections and anſwers diſputed; confirmed judgements if he approved them with a condeſcending approbation; or, if he altered them for the better, he always explained the reaſons why he differed in opinion from the Judges.

He eſtabliſhed a Life-guard, ſelected from the prime of the ingenuous youth, and cauſed them to be inſtructed in the uſe of arms by *Sherin*, and by *Riva* and *Antonio*, the two Italians who had accompanied him in his travels; he often exerciſed them himſelf, and inſtructed them in the beſt manœuvres. He taught them to form in ranks, and to uſe the bow; he diſtributed premiums, and promoted thoſe only who diſtinguiſhed themſelves by their addreſs and diligence.

Being no friend to pompous parade; keeping in pay but a ſmall number of Soldiers; and having no Harem; his expenditures were inconſiderable, which exempted him from the neceſſity of levying grievous taxes; he therefore remitted half the duties Anah had been accuſtomed to pay, and ſecured the inhabitants from thoſe exactions, which, under their former Sovereigns, every petty tool of power had arrogantly extorted from them.

He ſought out the indigent and poor in their mean dwellings: to the former, in conſideration of moderate labour, he allotted every thing neceſſary for ſubſiſtence; to the latter he aſſigned lands and cattle, wherewith the grateful Emirs had abundantly ſupplied him. His territories not being extenſive he

ſoon

ſoon knew every one of his ſubjects, encouraged the virtuous by his favours and his praiſe, and the vicious and idle he firſt admoniſhed, then ſhewed his diſpleaſure, and, if that failed, made them feel his puniſhment.

A Sovereign's virtue is his Country's happineſs. Subjects muſt venerate a Prince who manifeſts a tenderneſs for their welfare; whoſe ears are ever open to their complaints; who alleviates their diſtreſſes, and ſuffers no merit to go unrewarded. The praiſe of USONG, choruſſed by his grateful people, reſounded throughout all the different countries which had any intercourſe with Anah; ſeveral petty States ſhook off the yoke of tyranny, and ſought protection under the only Prince who, within the memory of man, had the welfare of Meſopotamia neareſt his heart.*

PERSIA was then in a ſtate of confuſion; over the northern provinces reigned *Abuſaid*, a deſcendant of *Timur*, and an oppreſſive tyrant. *Shehan Shach*, another Turcomann, governed Aderbeitſhan, Irak, Fars, and Kerman, with an iron ſceptre! Shiras was ſubject to *Mirza Juſuf*; Bagdat, Baſora, and many other towns and diſtricts, had their

* According to the Weſtern Writers USONG was Prince of Diarbekir, a country lying ſomewhat more to the Northward.

petty

petty Princes, who were continually at war with each other, impoveriſhing their ſubjects to maintain large armies, and keep numerous Harems. Throughout all Perſia the complaints of the oppreſſed aſcended to heaven, in lamentable accents.

DIARBEKIR* eagerly threw itſelf into USONG's arms; Bagdat and Baſora formally petitioned for the happineſs of having him for their Monarch. This increaſe of territory obliged him to divide his cares, and augment his military force; but the vivacity of his genius rendered every labour eaſy; and the end which he always had in view, of becoming a providential inſtrument of good to men, converted theſe accumulated toils of government into the ſweeteſt of pleaſures.

THE ſenſible and virtuous from all parts of Perſia reſorted to USONG; intreated his compaſſion on the diſtreſſes of mankind, and beſeeched him not to ſuffer, almoſt under his eyes, ſo many thouſands of innocent people to languiſh in oppreſſion. USONG's generoſity took fire at the thought of being Perſia's Deliverer; but, young as he was, he foreſaw the difficulty of ſubduing powerful tyrants, and could not without horror think on the blood-ſhed which it would occaſion.

* Bizarro de reb. Perſ.

HE,

He, at length, adviſed with the reſpectable *Haſſan*; acquainted him with the offers which had been made, and deſired his opinion, as a religious man, whether he might juſtly take in hand the deliverance of Perſia. *Haſſan* looked upon this heroic deed as pregnant with welfare to many millions: The Eaſtern People are accuſtomed to prefer a public good to the private happineſs of a few. The pious *Haſſan* himſelf animated Usong to comply with the requeſt of the Perſians.

This encouragement from the moſt virtuous of men determined the reſolution of the grandſon of *Tſhengis*; he requeſted his friends, the Arabian Princes, to furniſh him with a choice body of cavalry, and obtained it without difficulty. Volunteers flocked in abundance to ſerve under a leader whom they ſo much admired; *Dſhuneid* tore himſelf from his beauteous *Emeta*'s arms, and came with a ſelect troop of noble Arabians; the province of *Kurdiſtan* ſupplied Usong with excellent Infantry, which have ever ſince proved the Perſian Monarch's ſureſt ſafeguard. All Diarbekir and Algezira would take arms for their beloved hero, but Usong ſelected only the braveſt and moſt active. Thus he aſſembled a ſmall but choſen army, which he exerciſed himſelf; and thoſe who had been formed

formed by him at Anah, he appointed commanders.

THE firſt Tyrant who felt his power was *Shehan Shach* of the *Black Sheep* tribe. He was advanced in years, and a cruel Prince, wantonly addicted withal to luſt and drunkenneſs. He had formed a ſcheme to ſurprize the vigilant USONG with a flying party, but his exceſſes precipitated his own deſtruction. USONG attacked him by night, when exceſs of wine had incapacitated him from making reſiſtance. The Grandſon of *Tſhengis* ordered his Enemies tents to be ſet on fire, ſo that in one dreadful night the unhappy Turcomann's troops, ſaw themſelves ſurrounded by flames and ſlaughter. Their Prince himſelf fell in the action, and few of his Army eſcaped. The Tyrant's riches, the fruits of violence and extortion, fell into the hands of the Arabs and the Kurdes, and animated them to new victories.

HASSAN ALI, *Shehan*'s Son, a tyrant of a ſimilar diſpoſition, levied an army ten times more numerous than that of USONG's, but Providence ſeemed to pave the way for the *Tſhengides* to aſcend the Throne of *Cyrus* and of *Nuſhirwan*. USONG met *Haſſan Ali* already half vanquiſhed, for *Abuſaid*, a deſcendant of the victorious *Timur*, having taken the

the Field againſt him, the greater part of that unfortunate Prince's troops forſook him, ſo that USONG eaſily routed the remainder, and *Haſſan Ali* was found amongſt the ſlain.

THE powerful *Abſuſaid*, in the mean time advanced to Aderbeitſhan, and USONG's army was much too ſmall to riſque a battle; but the prudent Prince of Anah knew the advantage to be reaped from the ſwiftneſs of his Arabian horſes. Dividing them therefore into ſeveral bodies, to each he appointed its poſt, and aſſigned a tract of land in which they were daily to ſcour the Country, and likewiſe a place where theſe ſeveral detached parties were to rendezvous. The Arabs cut off all communication with *Abuſaid*, and intercepted his ſupplies. When the Enemy's heavy Cavalry marched againſt them the Arabs diſperſed, and in a few days reaſſembled and repeated their irruptions, whilſt USONG had poſted himſelf ſo advantageouſly at Carabag, that *Abuſaid* found it impracticable to attack him with any probability of ſucceſs.

THE oriental Troops are valiant only whilſt ſucceſs attends their arms; misfortune diſcourages and diſperſes them, they deſert that Prince whoſe unfortunate ſtars lead them not to victory. *Abuſaid* therefore

was

was forſaken by his diſtreſſed Soldiers, and he himſelf was brought captive to the generous USONG, who ſaid to him, "Grand-"ſon of *Timur*, I am ſorry for thy fate, tho' "thou didſt attack me without any provoca-"tion continue here, and with calm ſubmiſſion "bow to thy deſtiny." But USONG's noble intention was fruſtrated, for during his abſence ſome Perſians ſeized the opportunity of revenging the lawleſs tyranny of *Abuſaid* by murdering him. *

USONG now proceeded againſt the remainder of the *Black Sheep* tribe, and Shiras and Fars he conquered almoſt without engaging. *Khoraſſan* was under different Princes of the Timur race, who had weakened each other by inteſtine commotions; on the approach of the Perſian troops, ſome fled to the Uſbeks, and *Badizzaman* voluntarily ſurrendered to the Conqueror famed for clemency. At Tabris he met with a royal reception. *Mirza Juſuf*, who reigned at Shiras, fell an eaſy ſacrifice to his victorious arms. To Europeans it may ſeem ſtrange how Eaſtern Empires could be ſub-

* The Eaſtern writers make him to have been condemned to die by a Court Martial.

dued in ſo ſhort a time, but Perſia had no fortreſſes, and the hearts of the people panted towards the beloved USONG. The many petty Princes were the ſcourge and abhorrence of the Perſians, and thus was this immenſe Empire ſubdued without loſing to the conqueror a ſingle friend.

HE now ſummoned the principal Perſians, the Elders of the people, the Chiefs of their tribes, and the Wiſe-men of the Empire to aſſemble at Caſwin. They chearfully obeyed his ſummons, and the innumerable multitude of their horſes covered a ſpacious plain. The army, which under the command of USONG had vanquiſhed ſo many enemies, encircled their victorious general in all the pomp of triumph. The numerous ſtandards, the armour of the ſlain Princes, the imperial Enſigns of the race of *Timur*, which they had taken in the war, theſe they bore with them: their ſhouts inceſſant proclaimed to the aſſembled Perſians, the high veneration they felt for their gracious and valiant commander, who through the dangers of a formidable war, had led them without loſs, to triumphant victory.

USONG, apparelled in a military attire, which added luſtre to his graceful perſon, appeared amongſt

amongſt them, and thus addreſſed the numerous aſſembly: "Noble Perſians, you are now "convoked to nominate a Sovereign for "your Empire. It was divided into twenty "Principalities, The moſt antient kingdom "of the world was trampled on by Bar-"barians; now it is re-united; chooſe "yourſelves a Sovereign who will reſtore "to Perſia its former luſtre." *Long live* USONG *Padiſhaw*, * *victorious as* CYRUS, *wiſe as* NUSCHIRWAN, *may he reign as long as* SAPOR †, was the acclamation which reſounded through the innumerable multitude, and not a ſingle Perſian refuſed to join the general ſhout.

USONG bowed. "Your confidence, no "ble Perſians, ſaid he with emotion, is great "indeed; may USONG but fulfil your ex-"pectations, all the endeavours of his life "ſhall be devoted to your welfare."

THUS amidſt the moſt joyful acclamations he aſcended the Throne of *Cyrus*, and girded

* The primitive title of the Kings of Parthia; as is to be ſeen on the Medals of Vologeſe II. The Turkiſh Sultans bear it, and tranſlate the European title of Emperor by Padiſhaw. The ſovereigns of Perſia, of the Ali family, have continually bore it.

† Seventy years.

on his thigh *Ruſtan's* ‡ heroic ſword, preſerved as a ſacred relic; he diſtributed rich preſents amongſt his Arabian friends, the Kurdes and his faithful Perſians, deeming his future hopes ſufficient wealth. The Emirs returned enriched and ſatisfied, to their ſeveral tents. *Dſhuneid* alone, to whom, ſince his abſence, a ſon had been born, could not ſo ſoon depart from his exalted friend.

‡ A Hero amongſt the primitive Perſians who have yet many Coloſſal monuments of him.

End of BOOK I.

USONG.

BOOK II.

THE beginning of the new Emperor's reign was very turbulent. Fluſhed with the ſanguine hope of fervid youth, USONG had advanced himſelf to the throne of Perſia; but now he began to feel the weight of the taſk he had undertaken. A ſtranger, without any kindred in the country, and known in Perſia only within two years, undertook the adminiſtration of an immenſe Empire, which, for ſome centuries paſt, had been ſo diſtracted, that neither laws, order, nor any ſettled conſtitution, had been known in it; and the Perſians, being continually miſerable under tyrannical Princes, had conceived a hatred to their Sovereign. The military affairs, the finances, the laws, and the manners of the people, were in the greateſt confuſion; and all required to be rectified at once.

A MULTIPLICITY of these cares could not, however, banish from USONG's mind the image of his lovely LIOSUA: "LIE-"WANG's prophecy, said He to the joyful "*Sherin*, is now fulfilled; go and carry "these presents, with this letter, to the illus-"trious Zongtu of Shensi, and his virtuous "daughter." The Emperor having laden his Confidante with such curiosities as he had brought from Europe, together with the choicest products of Persia, *Sherin* departed.

THE Emperor, at the same time, writ to the wise Senators of Venice, and dispatched *Riva* with an important proposal, and costly presents.

THE chief object of USONG's consideration now was to raise Persia from the miserable condition into which it was sunk. He reflected on all that he had learned from the Sages in China, and likewise what he had heard from the experienced LIEWANG; he compared it with the observations made during his residence amongst the wise Venetians, and with the virtuous *Morad*. This added to his own penetration, together with the assistance of a clue, afforded by some aged Persians whose merit he had discovered, helped to conduct him through the difficult labyrinth.

USONG

USONG firſt drew up a plan for his own life; he conſtantly roſe with the ſun, ordered all the doors of the palace to be opened, and his people to be admitted to an audience, in the order in which they had announced themſelves. They who had petitions to preſent, had the ſatisfaction of delivering them into the Emperor's own hands, and were ſoon made acquainted with his reſolution. The adminiſtration of juſtice, and law affairs, were tranſacted in his preſence. After theſe public audiences, USONG, with his Miniſters of State, entered on the affairs of the Empire, which, according to a diviſion he had made, had their particular days. In the evening he took an airing on horſeback; thus ſhewing himſelf to the people, and enquiring into all the circumſtances of the Police, and the adminiſtration of Juſtice. His Confidantes, whom he changed alternately every day, continued their obſervations until night, and gave him the neceſſary information concerning every tranſaction of conſequence. USONG found no delight in the diverſions of the chaſe, in banquets, or muſic: "A Prince, he often "uſed to ſay, has not an hour but what be- "longs to the State;" his whole entertainment conſiſted in free, liberal, and ſocial converſation, and books of hiſtory, in which

he employed himſelf during the moſt ſultry hours of the day.

PERSIA, which he was now appointed to govern, being infinitely larger than Anah, USONG could no longer promiſe himſelf the ſatisfaction of canvaſſing the moſt minute circumſtances relative to the inferior affairs of the Empire. He had recourſe, therefore, to faithful ſervants, on whoſe reports he could ſafely depend: He diſpatched into every Province a Delegate*, for that was the title he gave them, and for this employment he generally made choice of perſons whoſe integrity he had experienced in Meſopotamia. Their firſt inſtruction was to receive the people's homage, and to declare to them, that the Emperor would fix the taxes which the ſplendor of the Throne, and the neceſſity of the State, required, on the firſt Naurus†; in the mean time he expected from every perſon a free gift, at the ſame time recommending them to proportionate it to their circumſtances, firſt conſidering the neceſſities of their families. All Perſia was charmed with their new Monarch's generoſity, and the free gift

* Chardin calls them Intendants. Miſſi Dominici was the term among the Carlovingians.

† New Year's Day.

exceeded

exceeded what USONG would have required, had he himſelf aſſigned the ſum. His Delegates had likewiſe in charge to make enquiry throughout the provinces over which they preſided, after ſuch perſons as were moſt renowned for capacity and virtue; theſe they were to ſummons before them to examine into their talents, and, after carefully informing themſelves of their integrity, they were to recommend three for every office of Magiſtracy and Judicature.

THE choice and reaſons of recommendation were to be left to the Emperor. The election was to be poſtponed until the Emperor's arrival in the Province, that the Candidates might make their perſonal appearances before him.

USONG gave his Delegates to underſtand, that he would never forgive a deception; and that thoſe who, ſuffering themſelves to be bribed, attempted to promote a weak or a vicious man, ſhould for ever be baniſhed from his preſence.

THE Emperor began his journey ſome months before the *Naurus*, viſiting the fifteen provinces of his extenſive Empire; and in every capital City he ſpent ſome days. All petitions, all repreſentations of the neceſſities of the people, he received perſonally, and, in like manner, examining the parties recommended

mended to him; he elected for the term of a year those whose discourse shewed their wisdom, and inclination to virtue. Such as were proposed to him were registered in the *Books of the Worthies*, and every year the Governors were to give in a report of what merits and what defects they had observed in each; and whom they had reason to believe properly qualified to be added to their list.

Most of the towns Usong found decayed; many villages quite deserted; and the canals *, without which Persia is a parched waste, out of repair. "These, said he to "*Dshuneid* sighing, are the fruits of weak "Princes, who never loved their subjects." He first gave orders for repairing and clearing the canals, and appointed rewards for finding out new springs, or such as had been dried up; he purchased several thousands of sheep and oxen of his friends the Kurdes, which he lent to his necessitous subjects for three years without interest, and allowed them three years more to discharge the principal. He also directed canals and sluices to be made from the rivers of inland Persia, for conveying water into the more arid plains; he fixed premiums for planting of fruit-trees, particularly that feeder of silk-worms the mulberry tree, and offered one moiety the first year to

* This was deemed by one of the wise Wasirs, a most grievous Public calamity.

those

thoſe who planted, and another moiety to thoſe who, after three years, had preſerved the greateſt number. He offered to contribute towards the repairs of damaged houſes; the highways and bridges, which had been much neglected, were likewiſe in their turns to be put in the beſt order; for which the Crown undertook to contribute two thirds, and the other third the people was to make good, by finding workmen and labourers. He ſignified his intentions of viſiting each province frequently; "and him, ſaid he, ſhall I eſteem "my friend, who moſt improves his land, "and gives to the State a numerous, well-"educated offspring."

In every place where he came he aſſembled the Artificers and Tradeſmen, deſiring them to acquaint him with the products of art and nature; which of the two produced the moſt, what the ſoil and ſituation of each country ſeemed beſt adapted to afford in plenty; together with the means by which ſuch fruits of induſtry, and gifts of the divine bounty, might be multiplied and improved. All propoſals of this kind were regiſtered; and, concealing the projectors names, ſubmitted to the criticiſm of other intelligent perſons.

"Persia, ſaid Usong, is indigent; but "it has within itſelf a ſource of wealth."

He began with regulating the taxes; he recollected the mode of farming duties practiſed by the Ottomans, and the method which he had obſerved in China. Some of his Miniſters adviſed farming the revenue: "A "petty State, ſaid they, can ſuperintend its "finances, examine accounts, prevent ſmuggling, and other illegal practices; but in "an Empire immenſe as Perſia, the Prince's "vigilance cannot prevent the money raiſed "upon the ſubjects from ſticking to the "hands of avaricious receivers; and if not "prompted by covetouſneſs to an attentive "diſcharge of their duty, their negligence "will coſt the Prince one half of his income. "By farming the revenue a Prince knows "his income, and can obviate the complaints "of his ſubjects by limiting the contract to a "ſhort time, or puniſhing delinquents by "ſuperceding them."

Usong had in China been taught, that the Emperor was the father of his people, and his heart aſſented to the maxim with the warmeſt emotions. "Never, ſaid he, will "I part with the glorious privilege of being "the firſt to promote my people's welfare. "When locuſts ravage a country, muſt it "ſtill pay the cuſtomary taxes? When the

Pea-

"Peaſant's* cattle is deſtroyed by diſeaſe,
"ſhall he yet be liable to pay a tax for his
"land, though diſabled from plowing it?
"A farmer of the revenue doubles all impoſts,
"reckons on every uncertainty, though but
"barely poſſible, and deducts from the con-
"tract-money for every probable danger:
"Thus the Prince is a loſer, and the Contrac-
"tor, in the mean time, fleeces the people by
"a thouſand extortions, that he may laviſh on
"his pompous luxury what the Peaſant's
"family ſhould ſubſiſt upon." USONG had obſerved amongſt the Ottomans the iniquity of the financiers, and the conſequent diſtreſſes of the ſubjects, even under a wiſe and a gracious Sultan.

THE Emperor reſolved to copy the example of China and Hindoſtan, and levy a tax upon each acre of land. In moſt of the Perſian provinces, during the reign of the wiſe NUSHIRWAN, an exact meaſurement of the land had been regiſtered, that the neceſſary canals might be properly proportioned to each acre. USONG recollected that the

* On a national calamity in the laſt century the Farmers repaired to Court, and ſhewed the Emperor the empty ears of corn, and the locuſts by which their grounds had been ravaged; and a general remittance was granted.

antient

antient Kings of Hindoſtan, who for their bounty were deified, had accepted of three-tenths of the products of the land for their revenue; and under this tax the people had enjoyed a golden age. "Perſia, ſaid he, "produces much leſs than the fertile Rice "Fields on the Banks of the Ganges and the "Caweri*: a poorer people needs help and "indulgence, and the neceſſities of the State "require no greater impoſitions." He taxed each acre of fruitful ground annually at half an ounce of ſilver, which does not quite amount to the twelfth part of the produce; and there ſtill was an immenſe tract, which, as crown land, might be farmed on contract, appropriated to public ſervices, or ſet apart as a fund for the relief of the indigent.

"THE taxes of an Empire, ſaid USONG "to his Miniſters, ſhould be ſimple, ſo "as to be received by the Magiſtrates "of every Town; whenever, as in Eu-"rope, they become multifarious and "complex, they require particular officers; "this gives birth to an army of vultures, who "prey upon the vitals of the ſubjects, and "yet the Monarch is forced to maintain

* A river in Coromandel, by which the Rice Grounds are watered.

"them.

" them. In Perſia every huſbandman ſhall, " according to the meaſurement of his land, " pay his tax to the Magiſtracy of the neigh- " bouring Town, who ſhall deliver it to the " provincial Collector, and thus the ſeveral " duties will come into the Treaſury without " defalcation from the revenue, or burden to " the people. The tax being aſcertained " according to the menſuration of the land, " leaves no room for errors or fraud; the " management likewiſe is not ſubject to any " difficulty. By this moderate tax Perſia " will not be impoveriſhed, and yet will the " Emperor be rich.*

" Should an avenging tempeſt lay waſte " the country, ſhould God in his wrath ſend " ſwarms of locuſts to devour the fruits of " the ground, ſhould a frozen ſky refuſe to " refreſh the earth with its genial ſhowers— " ſhould all this happen, the Emperor, by " his Miniſters, may eaſily inquire into the " complaints of his people, avert their ruin, " and alleviate their diſtreſſes by a remiſſion " of their taxes.

" BESIDES this tax there ſhall be no other. " Surely, continued USONG, the laborious

* According to a moderate computation his revenues don't fall ſhort of 1,300,000 marks of ſilver.

" Artiſt

" Artiſt might ſpare ſomething from his " earnings, and the wealthy Banker, from " his ſuperfluous abundance, might contri- " bute to aſſiſt the State; but for the Em- " peror to aſſeſs their profits, would be arbi- " trary and inequitable. The Merchant " would be detered from enlarging his traf- " fick, was he obliged to ſhare the produce " with the Emperor; and taxes which can- " not be rated at an equitable proportion, or " which may be augmented or diminiſhed by " enmity or favour, are, of all burthens, the " moſt intollerable. Even the Peaſant's tax " ſhall not be raiſed on account of an increaſe " in his crop; as a reward for his induſtry " the profit ſhall be his own: but as a puniſh- " ment to the ſlothful, he ſhall pay the ſame " impoſt laid on every acre, though unfruit- " ful through his negligence."

BESIDES the tax on land, USONG thought proper to lay a trifling duty on foreign merchandize imported into the empire. The Emperor's view herein was not to acquire riches, but an exact knowledge of the imports and exports, which led him to a diſcovery of the means whereby the wealth of Perſia might be improved. He thus alſo ſaw what imported goods might be diſpenſed with, and Perſian manufactures ſubſtituted in their ſtead;

ſtead; for USONG had too much political ſagacity not to be conſcious of the neceſſity of preſerving the ballance of trade in his favour. A nation ceaſes to flouriſh when its imports exceeds its exports in value.

SUCH was the Emperor's firſt plan relative to the finances; the next objects of his attention were the Law and the Police.

FROM what USONG had obſerved at Venice, he clearly ſaw that to preſerve a due equipoize between the Civil and Military Powers, ſhould be the principal care of a wiſe Prince. This Republic, though engaged in perpetual wars, had yet never ſuffered any commotion from its troops; whilſt at Rome revolutions had been often brought about by the Legions: and even Carthage, after the firſt punic wars, had greater dangers to expect from its own army, than it had ſuffered by the victorious Romans.

VENICE always conferred the command of her forces on foreigners, as having no party or connections in the country; and on them only for a certain number of years: their good ſervice was liberally rewarded, and their faults rigidly puniſhed. The military were excluded from any authority or influence in the Law, the Police, the Finances, and the Magiſtracy, ſo that the people lived independant,

dant, and thus a ballance of power was preſerved.

At Rome the military were in poſſeſſion of ſovereign power. If at intervals the Senate felt the ſpirit of liberty, and called to mind its ancient ſplendor, the ſwords of the Prætorian guards ſoon ſuppreſſed each patriotic effort. A few ſoldiers dethroned the noble Galba, and elevated in his ſtead the deteſtable Nero's companion in debauchery. Both the Senate and People had loſt their power; a numerous ſtanding Army was an oppreſſive yoke, the Capital could not ſhake off.

Usong conſidered it as a defect which would one day prove fatal to the Ottoman conſtitution; that the Governors of the provinces, were at the ſame time commanders of the Troops. This deſtroyed the ballance of civil power, and the people of courſe, languiſhed in the moſt abject ſlavery. Thus armed, a Governor is formidable to the throne itſelf, in proportion as the puniſhments of Eaſtern Princes are terrible; He has no more to dread from attempting a revolution, than from the calumnies of an Eunuch, the poiſonous breath of whom is not leſs deadly than unſucceſsful treaſon. In an inſurrection the Baſhaw bears down all before

before him; he meets with no reſiſtance, and ſacrificing the people to the Military, he governs without controul. Whilſt a *Bajazet* or a *Morad* commands his troops, leads them to the charge in perſon, and adds luſtre to the throne by his ſhining qualities; then has the Ottoman Empire nothing to dread; but all the imperial families in China, ſaid the judicious USONG, began with Heroes and ended in voluptuaries. The pleaſures of the Harem, the intoxicating draughts of ſenſual delights will alſo deſtroy the Sultans, their empire will be diſmembered, and each Eaſhaw will commence Sultan for himſelf.

THESE defects in the Eaſtern government, USONG carefully applied himſelf to prevent. He ſuffered not the Military to have any concern with the Finances, the Law, or the Police. The Governors of provinces, the Judges and Officers of the revenue, and eſpecially the Emperor's Delegates, ſtrictly watched the motions of the Military, and adviſed the court of the leaſt ſymptoms of any rebellious deſign. USONG avoided likewiſe the keeping general officers in his provinces, and endeavoured to prevail upon them to appear at court and live near him. The army he divided under

various

various commanders; inſtead of legions he would have only cohorts: diſcontents in ſo large a body as the former, being too dangerous.

WITH reſpect to the police, USONG ordered his delegates to ſelect for each village a Head-borough, and a Magiſtrate for every town to expedite affairs, requiring diſpatch; in the large cities was a *Daroga*, in the ſmall ones, a *Calentar*, and in every village there was an *Elder*. Theſe Magiſtrates were ſubordinate to a Governor, who generally was choſen from amongſt ſuch as had ſhewn capacity and integrity in the inferior ſtations. USONG was for having all elections come under the cogniſance of the court; he was ſenſible that to look into every thing himſelf, would be too great a burden for the ſovereign of ſo large an Empire, and generally referred the leſs important elections to his Governor and Delegate. He, however, conceived it more beneficial that both theſe officers ſhould in every caſe expect that the Emperor would himſelf inquire into their elections, and examine the reaſons which occaſioned them to be prefered. USONG did this very often in different provinces, or elſe left the examination to his confidants, and to have attempted to deceive him, would have been danger-

dangerous, for in this particular he was unforgiving.

THE collecting the taxes was entruſted to the magiſtrates abovementioned, with ſalaries proportioned to their ſtations, that they might be above the temptation of embezzling, but they were excluded from all perquiſites. The law had now its own eſtabliſhed judges; every thing in Perſia had been arbitrarily conducted, and power was conſidered as the only law. USONG ordered the laws of the wiſe NUSHIRWAN to be collected, reviſed and adapted to the times; a copy of which was to be tranſmitted to the different courts of juſtice, as a guide to the judges in giving their deciſions. In the capital towns of every province a court of judicature was eſtabliſhed, wherein none of the provincial magiſtrates were ever ſuffered to preſide. The judges ſole occupation ſhould be the law, their ſalaries were conſiderable, and the Emperor himſelf treated them with great regard. In theſe courts of judicature, matters were determined by a majority of voices, and the preſident was always a perſon of conſummate wiſdom; all inferior cauſes were decided here, whilſt affairs of more importance were laid before the Divan and the chief juſtices

juſtices of the Empire, amongſt whom, the Emperor himſelf frequently, though at uncertain periods, ſat to hear the plaintiff's allegations.

RECEIVING preſents (a cuſtom ſo prevalent in the Eaſt) USONG did not puniſh with death, being as ſparing of his ſubjects blood as of his own; but he diſmiſſed the offenders from their employments and diſgraced them with ignominy. This maxim he rigidly adhered to with inflexible ſeverity; he alſo publicly forbad any preſents to be offered to him, "For if the Em-"peror, ſaid he, will accept of preſents, his "miniſters will extort them two fold from "the people."

THE Delegates were to viſit the provinces annually, when the books containing the reaſons on which the judicial decrees were founded, were laid before them, ſome of which they examined, and when the judge's deciſion appeared culpable, it was remonſtrated to them with a ſevere reprehenſion, but on a repetition of the crime, the delinquent was cited before the Emperor, the caſe argued by the ſuperior officers, and even by the Emperor himſelf. If proved guilty of repeated and material criminalities, the Judges were then diſmiſſed from their employments, and a notification of their offences

offences was publiſhed throughout the Empire.

THE people had a right of appeal to the Emperor. "All my ſubjects, ſaid USONG "ſhall know that I labour but to preſerve "them from injuſtice; to keep them igno-"rant of this would be a ſpecies of oppreſ-"ſion."

PERSIA now called to mind the happy days it enjoyed under its primitive Emperors. "They are returned again, ſaid the people "in our times, it is now an age ſince juſtice "with the wiſe NUSHIRWAN * quitted "the Empire; but USONG has brought the "heavenly gueſt to dwell with us again."

THE military eſtabliſhment perplexed the Emperor; he was ſenſible that a ſtanding army deprives the land of its huſbandmen, prevents their marrying, and confines them to temporary duties only, which obſtruct the more important offices of an uſeful Citizen. The large expenditure of an army alſo renders heavy impoſts unavoidable, and is grievouſly burthenſome to the ſubject.

STILL, however, USONG ſaw that Perſia could not ſubſiſt without ſuch a ſtanding army.

* Is the great Coſroes of the Greeks, the conqueror of Juſtinian, but leſs reverenced by the Perſians for his victories than for his virtues.

The

The Ottomans were yet employed in the remote parts of the Weſt, and it was eaſy to foreſee that in a few years they would maſter the declining Byzantium. The heir of *Conſtantine* had already been deprived of all his territories without the walls of his capital. A preſumptuous Cadi had even erected his judgment ſeat cloſe adjoining to the imperial throne. USONG wiſely foreſaw, that no ſooner would the Ottomans conquer the debilitated Byzantium, than prompted by ambition, they would turn their arms Eaſtward. He knew their valour, and was convinced that a ſtanding army, well diſciplined and trained to martial exerciſe, was what only could enable Perſia to make head againſt their power. To face the Janiſaries, a large body of infantry and fire arms were neceſſary, to the latter of which the Perſians were entire ſtrangers, and they were averſe to ſerving as foot-ſoldiers. Khoraſſan was expoſed to the irruptions of Uſbeck Tartars, a people divided under no leſs than twenty Chiefs, and with whom no laſting peace was to be concluded, and who, though incapable of ſubduing countries, were yet very fit to make depredations on the frontiers, for the defence of which a light Cavalry was neceſſary.

CANDAHAR had in the Aſgans dangerous neighbours; they were a martial people, who, by repeated victories, had more than once erected Empires in India, where, under the name of *Patans*, they were the terror of the Idolaters. Here alſo veteran troops were neceſſary to keep in awe a people hardier than the Perſians.

USONG aimed at ſecuring his Empire without oppreſſing or depopulating it. He had become acquainted with the Curds *, a fierce and inhoſpitable tribe of Mountaineers, ſubject to no chiefs, and living without controul upon the produce of their cattle in tents, on the Weſtern borders of Perſia. The name of USONG rendered all negociations eaſy; he eſtabliſhed an agreement with the Mountaineers, whereby their freedom was guaranteed on condition of their furniſhing the Empire with a few thouſand men inured to arms, who afterwards became the flower of the Perſian troops. A ſelect number of theſe conſtituted

* By the Weſtern people called Turcomans or Turks, but theſe ſavage Robbers ſeemed incapable of military diſcipline, and the Kortſchi were for a long time the braveſt people of Aſia. Saladin and Kelaum, from whom the Souldans of Egypt deſcended, were both Curds.

the Emperor's Life-guard, from amongſt whom he formed moſt of his Generals, the reſt continued to live in tents on the Weſtern frontiers, but under military diſcipline, and the conſtant exerciſe of arms. Thus were the Weſtern frontiers of Perſia defended by the ſtrongeſt of all fences; the breaſts of a warlike people. USONG rejoiced that at the expence of ſome trifling favours, for a moderate ſtipend, and which is ſtill more by the alluring hopes of preferment, he had thus acquired a body of veteran troops that would ſpare the blood of his beloved Perſians.

THE Georgians had hitherto not been ſubject to Perſia, whereas now the certainty of pay, the flattering honour of ſerving under the greateſt Prince of Aſia, and the certain rewards of ſervices performed, incited theſe people to leave their mountains and flock in numbers to USONG's ſtandard. From them he formed a body of cavalry, the very choiceſt in all Aſia, and to them he committed the cuſtody of Candahar.

IN Choraſſan he fortified ſeveral ſtrong holds ſituated on hills. Theſe ſerved as Aſylums, wherein the people might ſecure their children and effects in caſe of a ſudden irruption of the Uſbecks. Along the frontiers he cantoned the Perſian cavalry, armed

armed with ſabres of the ſharpeſt ſteel, mounted on the beſt of horſes, and in the ſervice of a Prince, a generous rewarder of every merit, they ſoon became ſuperior to the formidable Uſbecks. On the ſummits of the hills USONG ordered piles of wood to be erected at certain diſtances, and guards to be ſtationed near them; theſe being ſet on fire when the Tartars made an incurſion, the whole country was ſoon apprized of the danger, on which the Perſians repaired to appointed places, and advanced againſt the enemy, whoſe ſtation the firſt aſcending ſmoke diſcovered. The Uſbecks, amongſt whom a fear of death, rather than ſentiments of honour prevailed, ſoon felt a diſinclination to expoſe themſelves to the ſabres of the Perſians, and therefore deſiſted from their depredations.

IN order to infuſe a warlike ſpirit into his troops, USONG aſſembled them in his annual journies. In his preſence they went through their various military manœuvres, battles, ſieges, attacks, and retreats. He diſtributed premiums amongſt the common ſoldiers; turbans, palm-branches, wreathes and honorary medals. The Officers he promoted, and advanced the moſt meritorious to poſts of the higheſt rank. All this he

the Emperor's Life-guard, from amongſt whom he formed moſt of his Generals, the reſt continued to live in tents on the Weſtern frontiers, but under military diſcipline, and the conſtant exerciſe of arms. Thus were the Weſtern frontiers of Perſia defended by the ſtrongeſt of all fences; the breaſts of a warlike people. USONG rejoiced that at the expence of ſome trifling favours, for a moderate ſtipend, and which is ſtill more by the alluring hopes of preferment, he had thus acquired a body of veteran troops that would ſpare the blood of his beloved Perſians.

THE Georgians had hitherto not been ſubject to Perſia, whereas now the certainty of pay, the flattering honour of ſerving under the greateſt Prince of Aſia, and the certain rewards of ſervices performed, incited theſe people to leave their mountains and flock in numbers to USONG's ſtandard. From them he formed a body of cavalry, the very choiceſt in all Aſia, and to them he committed the cuſtody of Candahar.

IN Choraſſan he fortified ſeveral ſtrong holds ſituated on hills. Theſe ſerved as Aſylums, wherein the people might ſecure their children and effects in caſe of a ſudden irruption of the Uſbecks. Along the frontiers he cantoned the Perſian cavalry, armed

armed with ſabres of the ſharpeſt ſteel, mounted on the beſt of horſes, and in the ſervice of a Prince, a generous rewarder of every merit, they ſoon became ſuperior to the formidable Uſbecks. On the ſummits of the hills USONG ordered piles of wood to be erected at certain diſtances, and guards to be ſtationed near them; theſe being ſet on fire when the Tartars made an incurſion, the whole country was ſoon apprized of the danger, on which the Perſians repaired to appointed places, and advanced againſt the enemy, whoſe ſtation the firſt aſcending ſmoke diſcovered. The Uſbecks, amongſt whom a fear of death, rather than ſentiments of honour prevailed, ſoon felt a diſinclination to expoſe themſelves to the ſabres of the Perſians, and therefore deſiſted from their depredations.

IN order to infuſe a warlike ſpirit into his troops, USONG aſſembled them in his annual journies. In his preſence they went through their various military manœuvres, battles, ſieges, attacks, and retreats. He diſtributed premiums amongſt the common ſoldiers; turbans, palm-branches, wreathes and honorary medals. The Officers he promoted, and advanced the moſt meritorious to poſts of the higheſt rank. All this he

could do unerringly, having himſelf obſerved the merit of every man.

But Usong had yet greater views; he would not entirely truſt the ſecurity of his Empire to foreigners, whoſe ambition might avail itſelf of the imbecility of the inexperienced Perſians. He endeavoured to form each Perſian into a ſoldier for his country's defence: to this end he ordained, that in thoſe intervals, when the labours of huſbandry required not the peoples conſtant attendance, one third of the adults ſhould aſſemble every week, on the day of reſt, with their arms, to learn their exerciſe, and ſubmit to thoſe regulations by which the military diſcipline forms the moſt heroic warriors. In conſequence of this ſalutary inſtitution, the whole nation became, without loſs of time, acquainted with the uſe of arms. Their Captains and Commanders were ſelected from thoſe intrepid warriors, who under Usong had emancipated Perſia from ſlavery.

The Emperor encouraged this Militia, as well as the Regulars, by the diſtribution of premiums and honorary marks of diſtinction; he was frequently preſent at their exerciſes, and expreſſed his ſatisfaction: each hundredth man, choſen from the innumerable multitude of Perſians capable of bearing arms, compoſed

compoſed a large army * of ſtrong and active ſoldiers, who being diſtributed throughout the different cities, performed garriſon duty in times of peace; at the expiration of every three years, thoſe who deſired it, were diſmiſſed and others enliſted to fill up their vacancies. Such as had particularly ſignalized themſelves were incorporated into the Life-guards, liberally paid, and promoted in rotation. By theſe regulations, all Perſians acquired an expertneſs in the uſe of arms, which in times of war might eaſily be carried to perfection. Their very minds were elevated by the eſtimation in which the Emperor held his ſoldiers. They conſidered themſelves no longer as the ſlaves of tyrants, but as the protectors of their country and Perſia's valiant warriors.

INDEFATIGABLE in his efforts, fulfilling the duties of his exalted ſtation with alacrity, USONG was daily improving the conſtitution of his Empire, when *Riva* returned from Venice with a numerous retinue of proficients in arts, and a large quantity of fire-arms.

THIS faithful ſervant had delivered the illuſtrious USONG's letter to the Doge and

* Shach Abbas could at one time ſhew to the foreign Ambaſſadors ſixty thouſand well diſciplined men, not one of whom was a ſoldier by profeſſion. *Della Valle.*

Senate of Venice, wherein the Emperor acquainted them with his elevation to the Perſian throne, and expreſſed his gratitude for the kind treatment he had received from ſeveral of the Venetian nobles. He propoſed to the Republic an alliance, intimating that the Ottomans were no leſs dangerous to Venice than to Perſia, and he concluded by requeſting permiſſion to purchaſe fire-arms from Breſcia, and to engage ſome artificers ſkilful in making them. Venice ſaw that its intereſt was combined with that of Perſia, and in a very reſpectful anſwer, aſſured the Emperor that an Envoy ſhould be ſent to confer about every thing of mutual advantage to both ſtates. The fire-arms and artificers were allowed.

THE Sultan of Egypt being as jealous as the Venetians of the Ottoman power, readily opened the Syrian ports to the Ambaſſador, and the rejoiced USONG diſtributed the arms amongſt his Body-guards. The Artificers had apartments aſſigned them where they were provided with ſteel, iron, and all other materials neceſſary for their buſineſs; they were continually employed in making fire-arms, and caſting large metal cannon, which then already uſed to decide the fate

of

of battles, and lay waſte the ramparts of fortified cities.

AMONG the letters from the Weſt there was one likewiſe from *Zeno*, who had now taken his ſeat in the ſenate. He aſſured the late Prince of Coconor of his ſincere joy at his elevation, and intimated that he hoped for the pleaſure of ſeeing his former friend again.

BUT news of far more importance doubly heightened USONG's happineſs. *Puldan* a Nowian * by deſcent, arriving on a ſwift courſer, brought letters from the faithful *Sherin*, who travelling to Quangtſhew by the way of Atchin, had called at the merchant's houſe, who by LIEWANG's directions had furniſhed the noble USONG with the neceſſaries for his voyage. He found him yet alive, and the merchant informed *Sherin* that the *Zongtu* of Shenſi ſtill held his poſt, as a favour granted by the Emperor at the unanimous requeſt of the province. *Sherin* arrived at Singan, and with pleaſure inexpreſſible, heard that LIEWANG's daughter was ſtill unmarried. Several illuſtrious lovers had ſolicited for this ornament of her race; they had offered treaſures immenſe for the poſſeſſion of this matchleſs

* A Prince of the blood among the Tſhengides.

beauty, but for reaſons known to herſelf only, all their propoſals had been rejected.

SHERIN was ſo well known in the Zongtu's palace that he ſoon obtained an audience, and with reſpectful reverence, he delivered the following Letter to the venerable ſage: "USONG, Emperor of Perſia, to "the worthy LIEWANG: The conjectures "of a wiſe man are propheſies; USONG "now governs one of the largeſt empires "in the world, but then only will he deem "himſelf happy when the virtuous LIOSUA "ſhares his throne."

SHERIN at the ſame time delivered the Emperor's preſents, which expreſſed the high eſteem he entertained for LIEWANG. Amongſt the number were ſeveral books relating to the laws and hiſtory of the Weſtern ſtates. *Sherin*, who had ſhared in the excellent education of his Prince, interpreted part of theſe writings, which to the wiſe LIEWANO were a new and unexpected treaſure, far more valuable than the pearls of Bahrein, as they were products of the wiſdom of thoſe diſtant nations, which were deemed in China Barbarians.

SHERIN, well acquainted with the tedious formality natural to the Chineſe, did not expect a ſpeedy anſwer. He therefore availed himſelf

himſelf of the time LIEWANG would take to conſider of the propoſal, and viſited the Mongalians. He haſtened to the aged TIMURTASH, to whom and the Princeſs he related the joyful tidings of USONG's preſervation and promotion to imperial dignity. He delivered the letters and preſents from the Emperor to his parents. The heart-felt ſatisfaction to hear, after having for many years bemoaned the ſuppoſed loſs of a ſon worthy their tendereſt love, that he yet lived and enjoyed a dignity equal to his anceſtor, the powerful *Tſhengis* drew tears of joy from his affectionate parents eyes, and the whole Hord expreſſed their pleaſure by a thouſand marks of general gladneſs. Several Nowians prepared themſelves to offer their ſervices to their illuſtrious kinſman, and a thouſand of the braveſt Mongalians accompanied them. This numerous and ſplendid train taking the rout to Candahar, waited for the Empreſs near the Lake of Tſariſh, for *Sherin* had informed TIMURTASH that he hoped to obtain the lovely bride for the mighty USONG. After a few months *Sherin* returned to Singan with letters from TIMURTASH, wherein he addreſſed the Zongtu for his daughter, intimating that he ſhould ſee

with pleaſure ſo virtuous a Princeſs allied to the race of *Tſhengis*.

LIEWANG had no doubt of obtaining the conſent of the fair LIOSUA, who had now attained her eighteenth year, and by numberleſs frivolous reaſons, had hitherto prevailed upon her indulgent father to excuſe her from every propoſal of marriage. The Prince of Kokonor's paſſion, his excellent qualities, and the graceful dignity of his perſon, had made the deepeſt impreſſion on the heart of the reflecting fair one. In whatever light ſhe conſidered USONG, compared with the Chineſe, ſhe thought him deſigned by nature for the ſovereignty over his fellow creatures. All the trifling virtues attained by the cuſtoms of China were eclipſed by the luſtre of thoſe perfections natural to the new ſovereign of Perſia.

LIEWANG, however, ſubmitted the propoſal of this marriage to his daughter's uninfluenced option. "I know, ſaid he, that "to diſpoſe of thy hand is a Father's pri- "vilege, but the heart is all thine own, "and I love thee with too much tenderneſs "to give thine hand where thine heart "could not accompany it."

The Zongtu, indeed, was not without his apprehenſions, for the race of *Iwen*, of which

which USONG was one of the chiefs, could not be conſidered otherwiſe by the Ming than as enemies to the imperial throne, and though what concerns the Chineſe women is generally confined within the limits of their recluſe abodes, and never becomes a matter of public converſation; yet LIEWANG could not expect that a marriage ſo much talked of among the Mongalians, ſhould long remain a ſecret at the court of Pekin.

THE Princeſs reddened at the propoſal, and with down-caſt eyes kneeling, ſhe modeſtly addreſſed her indulgent parent thus; "To form an alliance with a de-"ſcendant of the *Iwens* may expoſe thee, "my Lord and Father, to danger; therefore "conſult the Emperor's pleaſure."

SWEN ZONG was a praiſe-worthy Prince, untainted by the degeneracy which had already infected, and at laſt proved deſtructive to the imperial line of *Ming*. He returned for anſwer, "The ſon of *Iwen*'s "empire is too far weſtward to injure our "throne. LIEWANG may diſpoſe of the "hand of the fair Princeſs," for ſo he ſtiled the iſſue of his own imperial race.

THE Zongtu's objections were now removed, though in giving up his Daughter he parted with the ſole prop of his declin-

ing age; though he foreſaw the gloom of a ſolitary life when deprived of his ſoul's darling, yet he was too wiſe to prefer his own ſhort-lived happineſs to the ſplendid fortune of a blooming Daughter. LIOSUA promiſed implicitly to obey her father's will; and the Zongtu, after having ſent for *Sherin*, ſaid, "Here is the anſwer for the ſovereign "of Perſia. It is not the dazzling ſplendor "of a throne that could have allured my "daughter from me, ſhe follows the charms "of virtue." For it had reached the Zongtu's ears that USONG governed the empire of *Cyrus* with the wiſdom of its firſt ſovereign.

THE Princeſs now prepared for her departure agreeable to the cuſtoms of her country; ſhe provided not merely for the pompous attire neceſſary for an imperial bride, but ſhe inquired of *Sherin* what arts flouriſhed in China that were unknown to the Perſians, propoſing to beſtow a more valuable dower on her future conſort, than Pearls and Rubies.

SHERIN now laid at her feet the Emperor's preſents, the precious gems, the princely attire and rarities which many victories had acquired him. But LIOSUA found in USONG's letter that which ſhe prized beyond the moſt coſtly diamonds. "Fortune has elevated

"USONG

"USONG to the throne; but what alas is "a throne, if virtue withholds her chaſte "embraces." "No, ſaid the now candid "fair one, no, LIOSUA was attracted by "the early dawn of USONG's virtue; what "muſt ſhe then feel, now that his ſplendid "virtues blazen forth, and from a lofty "eminence irradiate on the world."

THE day, the painful day, arrived, when LIOSUA was to take a parting leave of her aged father. "Bleſs thy child, gracious Sir, ſaid "ſhe kneeling and diſſolved in tears; now, "now I feel, my aching heart experiences "the imperfection of all earthly bliſs. Love "me, Oh! for ever love me; ever ſhall "I remain thy tender, grateful LIOSUA." LIEWANG tore himſelf from her arms, and all his ſententious dignity of wiſdom could not ſuppreſs his riſing griefs——He wept.

SHE departed with her retinue, attended by the faithful *Sherin*, who by the means of her women, related to her the many glorious actions performed by her future Bridegroom, and thus diverted the melancholy which ſtill hung upon her ſpirits. Near the Lake Tſariſh ſhe met the Nowians, together with her retinue, that attended to eſcort her into Perſia. The cuſtoms of her country permitted her not to ſhew herſelf; but a thouſand joyful acclamations, expreſſed in

in all the wildneſs of unpoliſhed nature, reſounded daily round her Palankin, which was encircled by her new ſubjects; and now ſhe was near the borders of Candahar, when *Poldan* left her, and haſtened forward to the Emperor with the joyful news of her approach.

THE noble USONG's ſuſceptible heart beat high with rapturous delight at the glad tidings of the Nowian. He received him to his arms and aſſured him of his unalterable eſteem. "Now, ſaid he to *Dſhuneid*, "now am I amply rewarded for all my "labours. Henceforth I will joyfully de- "vote each day to the cares of ſtate, ſince "each evening the company of the wife, "the fair, the virtuous LIOSUA awaits me. "She, ſuperior to all vulgar dalliance, will "recruit my wearied ſpirits with her ſocial "converſe; no leſs expreſſive of her ſweet- "neſs than the ſentimental excellence of her "all-accompliſhed mind."

USONG ſignified to the Perſians by his Delegates, that the Emperor required no additional ſubſidy or expences on account of his nuptials; that his intended Conſort had a mind too noble to expect public rejoicings, which though pleaſing to the people, were yet attended with unneceſſary expenditures; but that he ſhould deem it a token of their

their love, if they would receive their new Empreſs with garlands, ſongs, dances, and other natural expreſſions of joy unfeigned.

THE Perſians gladly ſeized the opportunity of ſhewing the ardent veneration they felt for their Emperor. As ſoon as LIOSUA entered the frontiers of Perſia, ſhe found her way adorned with ſucceſſive arches of blooming verdant trees, ſhady bowers, and Villagers chaunting their triumphal hymns. Even the ſolitary mountains were peopled by a multitude, who loudly proclaimed to LIOSUA the virtues of her future conſort. The faireſt of the country nymphs marched in proceſſional rows on each ſide her Palankin, ſtrewing it with the ſweeteſt flowers, whilſt the Princeſs, all affability, invited the moſt amiable amongſt them into her preſence, ſhewed herſelf, and preſented them with ſeveral curious Chineſe trinkets.

THE Emperor, being in the vigour of youth, flew enraptured to meet his beloved Princeſs; but he tranſgreſſed not the manners of her country, which deprives the ardent Bridegroom from even a ſight of his future Bride, until the celebration of the marriage rites are finally concluded. The long-wiſhed-for fair one at length approached, and the *Seder* of Perſia joined the Royal pair, whilſt *Shiras* reſounded with ſhouts of

joy

joy inceſſant. The baſhful LIOSUA now drew aſide her veil and once more diſplayed to USONG thoſe features expreſſive of love, virtue, and ſoft enchanting ſweetneſs. She was now in the bloom of life, and never had China produced a more accompliſhed beauty; but the noble ſoul which animated all her charms, elevated her beyond compare. She attempted to proſtrate herſelf at the Emperor's feet, but he tenderly raiſing her, preſſed her to his boſom: "Welcome, "ſaid he, thou nobleſt gift of all-bounteous "Heaven, for ever reign Empreſs of Perſia "and Regent over thy fond, thy happy "USONG's heart."

SHIRAS was the place the Emperor choſe for his new conſort's reſidence. The mildneſs of the air, the limpid ſtreams, the rich luxuriance of nature, producing roſes and luſcious grapes, the fragrant gardens abounding in the choiceſt fruits; the pomegranate and orange-trees rendered this city the Perſian paradiſe, and USONG had fortified it by ſtrong walls againſt all hoſtile attacks. LIOSUA now reſolved on fulfilling her premeditated project. She cauſed thoſe grounds that were unfit for grazing, to be planted with Mulberry-trees in a regular order, which being pruned, afforded food for Silkworms; and the experienced Chineſe taught the

the Perſians the whole culture and manufacture of ſilk. LIOSUA herſelf took pleaſure in inſtructing the female novices by her example. Thus did the conſort of the godlike *Fohi* employ her time.

AT intervals ſhe was conveyed abroad, whilſt her attendants kept off the people at a proper diſtance, agreeable to the manners of her country. She choſe a graſſy plain to which the waters of the *Corremderhe** might be conveyed; here ſhe directed houſes to be built for Spinners, Bleachers, Weavers and Painters of the fineſt cotton, a commodity with which Coromandel alone had formerly ſupplied all the eaſtern countries.

BY means of the artiſts ſhe had brought from China, ſhe alſo diſcovered the two ſorts of ſoil fit for the manufacturing of Porcelaine. Furnaces were conſtructed, and hence aroſe a Manufactory, which though not equal to that of Chineſe porcelain, yet ſerved to furniſh ſubſtitutes for gold and ſilver at the tables of the Emperor.

THE charitable Princeſs made ſtrict enquiry after the indigent and helpleſs poor. To the blind, the infirm, the widows left with families, and the deſtituted orphans, ſhe ſent weekly preſents. She ſearched out the

* A River that runs through Shiras.

moſt

moſt induſtrious labourers, and mothers the moſt careful, and her generoſity deigned to viſit the humbleſt cots. Theſe benefits ſhe confered without oſtentation or deſire of thanks.

THE females whoſe rank gave them admittance to her preſence, learned from the example of LIOSUA to prize virtue above all other blandiſhments. She ſpoke in commendation of conſcious innocence; expatiated on the dignity of a wife, who ſtudies only the pleaſure of her conſort. She enlarged on the joys of domeſtic harmony, and the deſpicable nothingneſs of external pomp and ſhew, which may dazzle the eyes of the vulgar, but always evinces the more laſting ornaments of the ſoul to have been neglected. LIOSUA was a moſt amiable teacher of virtue, her engaging manner rendered her precepts pleaſing, and tempted others to follow her example.

SHE daily ſought out new amuſements for her beloved USONG, when, fatigued with public cares, he returned for repoſe to her inviting arms. She repeated to him all that ſhe had read or ſeen; her female attendants rehearſed ſuch paſſages out of plays, as diſplayed the ſublimeſt virtue in the moſt attractive garb; ſhe collected ſuch curioſities in which USONG took delight, productions of nature,

nature, of art, and human genius. Even the Princeſs's mildneſs, and the vehement ardour of USONG, added to LIOSUA's ignorance of the weſtern Cuſtoms, all theſe formed an agreeable contraſt, which gave life and ſpirit to the mutual converſation of this exalted Pair.

HER pregnancy was now declared; ſhe bore about her the hopes of Perſia, when *Zeno*, USONG's former friend, arrived Envoy from Venice. He being an admirer of the new Emperor's virtues, felt more pleaſure at his exaltation as a friend, than as an Ambaſſador from an allianced State. He brought to USONG various preſents; the moſt acceptable of which were ſundry books in printed characters, then newly invented, which LIOSUA preferred to the Chineſe impreſſions, as here the types could ſerve repeatedly, whilſt the ingraved tablets of the Chineſe allowed of no alteration.

ZENO alſo brought certain new plans for the greater improvement of the uſe of fire-arms, together with ſmaller cannon, that might be managed with greater eaſe. He had ſelected from the fertile Europeans the moſt novel works of art or genius, which could contribute either to the convenience of life, or the ſplendour of a Court.

HE

He acquainted the Emperor with the armiſtice which had been concluded between the Venetian Republic and the wiſe *Morad*; for though Venice viewed with a jealous eye the growing power of the Ottomans, yet could ſhe not refuſe paying that homage to the Sultan, which genuine virtue merits. *Morad* was no leſs formidable as an enemy, than conſtant as a friend.

The Senate, however, repreſented to the Emperor, the general danger which threatened both Europe and Aſia, from the triumphant arms of the Ottomans. *Morad* having already conquered Thracia and Macedonia, made Ediene* the Seat of his Empire; a circumſtance which ſtruck terror into the neighbouring Conſtantinople. Byzantium was deſtitute of power and auxiliaries, Europe was divided into a number of principalities, perpetually contending with each other for trifling advantages, which occaſioned inteſtine broils adjuſted by temporary conventions, but never finally ſettled by any ſolid peace. None of the European Princes, either by their actions, or their efforts, had given any hopes that they would one day prove Defenders of general Liberty, againſt the menacing Ottomans. *Caſtriot* and *Hunniades*

* Adrianople.

were

were rather enterprizing Freebooters than powerful Monarchs, and their deaths would remove every reſtraint to *Morad*'s ambitious views. Venice was watchful, well-armed, and her navy ſuperior to that of the Ottomans, but her land-forces were too weak to reſiſt the numerous army of diſciplined, hardy Veterans.

THE prevailing maxim with the Senate was, rather to hazard extreme danger, than adopt meaſures which might reflect diſhonour on the Republic. "Danger, ſaid the Nobles, "is not to be avoided by mean expedients; "it is rather augmented by the courage "thereby inſpired into the enemy, and by "the contempt excited amongſt the neigh-"bouring Nations. Byzantium has expe-"rienced this fatal truth: Every ſhameful "peace ſhe has concluded has impaired her "ſtrength; and, without the loſs of battles, "reduced her to nothing. Another ſingle "campaign of the Sultan muſt prove her "final ruin."

THE Senate urged the powerful USONG to conſider the near approach of danger to himſelf; they moſt reſpectfully wanted him, as the ſole Protector of the balance of Power, to augment his forces during peace, that he might be prepared for a war, which Perſia could

could not long avoid. They offered to the Emperor their friendſhip and aſſiſtance in every thing, which could ſtrengthen or ſupport him. USONG liſtened to this propoſal with caution: To attack the generous *Morad* unprovoked, claſhed with that love of juſtice which governed the Emperor in all his determinations. Beſides, he was as yet unprepared; his Perſians would not accuſtom themſelves to the uſe of fire-arms; they were averſe to the foot ſervice, not from a dread of danger, but fatigue; which, in thoſe ſultry climates, is an evil moſt grievous to the people. USONG had ſcarcely been able to prevail on a trifling number of Curds and Perſians to form themſelves, under his immediate inſpection, into a body of Regulars, who improved themſelves in the uſe of fire-arms, by way of exerciſe and diverſion.

BUT the gallant USONG never was diſmayed. By inceſſant endeavours every obſtacle is at length ſurmounted, which ſeemed at firſt arduous and invincible. "A Rivulet, "ſaid the Emperor to his Perſians, once "ſolicited a Rock for a free paſſage; the "Rock in ſilence oppoſed the requeſt, but "the Rivulet deſiſted not from forcing its "way. Many ages paſt before an aperture "was made; at length the perſevering Rivu-

"let

" let ſucceeded, and obtained that free courſe " through the obdurate Rock, opened by " its unremitted efforts."

LARGE pieces of ordnance were now caſt; but the Perſians thought it would not be poſſible to convey them through the narrow ways, and over the lofty mountains. The Emperor alſo ordered ſmaller pieces to be made, which, in caſe of neceſſity, might be carried by Camels, and would prove infinitely ſerviceable in battles.

THE Armourers had almoſt inſuperable difficulties to encounter; there is ſo cloſe a connection between the arts, that one cannot flouriſh without the aſſiſtance of the other. The European workmen were in want of ſeveral neceſſary utenſils; part of them died, unaccuſtomed to the climate, and the ſurvivors worked with a deſpondency, not being encouraged by the hopes of arriving at any degree of perfection in their undertaking.

USONG concealed not his uneaſineſs from *Zeno*, and expreſſed to him his hopes that the Republic would ſupply him with ſkilful Artiſts, neceſſary tools, and ammunition. He endeavoured to revive the drooping ſpirits of the preſent diſcontented Workmen by liberal preſents, friendly admonitions, and, more particularly, by the proofs he gave of a know-

knowledge in their profeſſion. For nothing more excites an Artiſt's emulation, than the aſſurance that he works for one who is a judge of his merit, and knows how to value his workmanſhip.

THE time was now arrived when USONG deſigned to ſurvey his empire; he propoſed to journey as far as *Erivan*, to viſit Irak, Aderbeitſhan, Diarbekir, and Algezira. *Dſhuneid*, *Zeno*, and a ſelect party of the moſt intelligent Perſians, together with ſome Nowians, all accompanied him on horſeback in martial array, without the pompous parade of Eaſtern Monarchs. At no place would USONG accept of entertainments; he lodged with none of the Grandees of the Provinces, but dwelt in tents, and thereby avoided thoſe expences which ever prove burthenſome to a people, when their Kings delight in ſplendid feſtivals. "My people, ſaid USONG, ſhould "wiſh for, and not dread the ſight of their "Sovereign. A coſtly, pompous, court-"parade, would prove a new burthen upon "my ſubjects."

HE tore himſelf from the arms of his beloved LIOSUA, and haſtened to Tſhehelminar, formerly the Imperial Seat of the powerful *Hydaſpides*. This place is ſituated on a fertile plain, watered by a thouſand refreſhing ſtreams,

ſtreams, and wherein the choiceſt, variegated, odoriferous flowers, attractive to the eye, bloſſom ſpontaneouſly. *Zeno* viewed with admiration the pompous ruins, too ancient for hiſtoric records to deſcribe, and which were the remains of palaces, whoſe ſtupendous greatneſs ſeemed to ſet all human workmanſhip at defiance. On the rocks the great exploits of the antient Perſian heroes were engraven in figures of colloſſal ſize.

AMONGST theſe antique monuments USONG met with ſeveral Hieroglyphics which he had before ſeen in Egypt, particularly the winged globe, that ſeemed to him emblematic of the Divinity. He ſuppoſed that the vaſt columns which ſeveral men could ſcarce encompaſs, were the remains of that ſuperb palace, once the reſidence of *Cyrus*; and *Zeno*, a refined judge in the polite arts, admired not ſo much the deſign of theſe remains, as the neat ſculpture, workmanſhip and poliſh of the hardeſt marble. It was on all hands agreed, that no modern Prince would ever poſſeſs riches ſufficient to undertake ſuch immenſe ſtructures, and that a people the moſt famed for invention, would be at a loſs for machines to convey and erect ſuch ponderous maſſes.

WHILST the Emperor's retinue were pleaſingly employed in contemplating ſculptured Marble and Porphyry, *Dſhuneid* perceived on a barren mountain an aſcending blaze *, and inquiring why ſo large a fire was kept on ſuch a dreary rock, he was anſwered by the Perſians, that what he ſaw was a perpetual fire kindled for the religious worſhip of the Guebers. *Dſhuneid* felt that he was an *Alid*; he ſtartled, "Is it "poſſible, ſaid he to the Emperor, that a "ſincere adorer of the Deity can tolerate "theſe worſhippers of an element?"

USONG ſmiling, replied, "Theſe ſplendid "ruins were once the reſidence of the Magi, "and *Cyrus* was a Gueber. For the deliver- "ance of Perſia his heroic virtue toiled thro' "a long life of continued victories, and after "twenty centuries we enjoy the fruits of "his patriotic labours. But ſeriouſly, con- "tinued he to his friend, ſhould Perſia "loſe many thouſands of induſtrious hands, "ſhould ſhe baniſh her beſt labourers and "depopulate whole diſtricts, becauſe the "poor Guebers are miſtaken in their notions

* In the neighbourhood of Tſhehelminar are ſeveral of theſe temples of the Guebers, dedicated to the worſhip of fire.

"of

" of religious worſhip? Did not *Ali*, did " not *Mahomet* tolerate the Chriſtians whom " he deemed Idolators? did not *Omar* him- " ſelf approve the humane orders of *Abu-* " *Obeidah*, who ſpared the Chriſtians blood, " and wreſted the victorious ſabre from out " of the hands of the invincible *Khaled* *, " becauſe he uſed it againſt the unbelievers " in too ſanguinary a manner."

" More than one half of Perſia, con- " tinued he, is quite a deſart; nature has " bleſſed it with every thing but people. " Induſtrious hands alone can procure the " fruits of the earth and convert it to that " uſe, for it was created for the ſupport of " man. The Guebers are a peaceful, patient, " inoffenſive people, and it is likely many " of them may learn of us to acknowledge " an incorporeal, infinite, and incompre- " henſible Deity, who if perſecuted, might " fly to Hindoſtan, and commence worſhip- " pers of idols made of clay, the works of " Men's hands."

Usong paſſed through the flouriſhing regions that ſurrounded Mayn; the coun- try of the pureſt water ſprings; he journied through the moſt antient and fertile Yez-

* See Oakley's Hiſtory of the Saracens.

dekaſt, productive of the fineſt corn, and came at length to the ſpacious Iſpahan. "This city, ſaid he, was by nature deſign-"ed for the metropolis of Perſia; it is "centrical, and the Senderud by fertiliz-"ing the whole plain, would eaſily ſupply "the wants of many thouſands of Perſians "were they there aſſembled;" but the milder air of Shiras, without whoſe genial warmth the delicately formed LIOSUA could not exiſt, gave it the preference, and a war ſoon after called the Emperor to Tabris.

CASHAN, on account of its ſilk manufacturies, attracted the Emperor's notice. It furniſhed the Eaſt with the fineſt ſtuffs, whoſe texture exceeded thoſe of all other nations; here USONG purchaſed gloſſy velvets, woven in a curious manner, repreſenting human figures: which he afterwards made preſents of to the Venetians, who admired theſe productions of the Eaſtern arts, and acknowledged that there were no artiſts who could excell or imitate the Perſian manufactures.

USONG had at Caſhan an unexpected opportunity of ſhewing that he was worthy to fill the throne of the juſt NUSHIRWAN. *Zeno* one evening perceived him uncommonly dejected: "Is there then a "deſtructive arrow in Fate's quiver which "can

" can wound even the noble USONG, and thus " diſeaſe his mind with melancholy?" " To- " morrow, replied the Emperor, my friend " ſhall know the cauſe of my dejection." He held his Divan in the caſtle of the antient kings; the Princes and grandees ſtood near his throne, and an immenſe concourſe of people encircled the palace. One *Muſtaſſem*, a gardener, who lived in the ſuburbs of Caſhan was ordered in; " Look round " thee, *Muſtaſſem*, ſaid the Emperor, can'ſt " thou point out the offender?" The Perſian proſtrated himſelf before the throne, glancing his eyes around, " This, ſaid he, is the " man, pointing to a Nowian whoſe name " was *Kulkas*, one of the Captains who " commanded the Emperor's Life-guard."

" KULKAS, my Couſin, does this man " ſpeak the truth?" ſaid the Emperor with a ſterneſs of voice which no Perſian till then had ever experienced from him. The Nowian, with down-caſt eyes, ſtood wretchedly diſmayed, and his ſilence evinced his guilt.

" KULKAS, ſaid the Emperor, we are not " come from the ſolitary banks of the " Kokonor to oppreſs the Perſians. God, " in placing me on the throne, has deputed " me his Vicegerent; atone for the injury

" thou haſt done to the Gardener's daughter,
" marry her, and aſſign her a dowry equal
" to what thou wouldeſt have offered to a
" Princeſs of the *Tſhengide* race. By to-
" morrow I expect the proofs of thy obedi-
" ence."

THE Nowian did homage, and departed with every mark expreſſive of profound ſubmiſſion.

THE day following he again appeared, and *Muſtaſſem* with him. " Here, ſaid *Kulkas*,
" is the contract and marriage ſettlement."

" Is *Muſtaſſem* content with this?" He bowed in token of his aſſent. " But the
" law, ſaid the Emperor, is not. *Kulkas*,
" continued he with ſeverity, Perſia has ap-
" pointed me to be her judge; juſtice is the
" ſacred pledge which God has entruſted
" to my hands; ſhall the virgin daughters
" of freemen be deſpoiled of their innocence
" before the Emperor's face, and ſhall his
" anger not be rouzed? I will be ſparing of
" the blood of the great *Tſhengis*, but fly
" *Kulkas*, ſeek ſhelter in ſome diſtant coun-
" try where tyranny reigns triumphant, and
" the powerful are permitted to trample
" under foot the honour of the feeble.
" Henceforth avoid the ſight of me and
" Perſia."

"Perſia." The Nowian withdrew and fled to the ſavage Uſbecks.

AT the friendly evening repaſt, the Emperor related what *Dſhuneid* and *Zeno* had previouſly conjectured. "Taking, ſaid he, "a ſolitary ride, my years were ſuddenly "aſſailed by loud complaints which pro- "ceeded from a delightful garden well- "ſtocked with great variety of the choiceſt "flowers. I was ſurprized to find ſuch "lamentation aſcend from the manſion of "tranquil innocence. I enquired the rea- "ſon; Sir, ſaid a diſconſolate old man, who "took me for an Officer of the Life-guards, "one of your brethren has forced away and "raviſhed my Daughter; ſhe was a virgin "in the early bloom of youth, and I much "too infirm to reſiſt his brutal violence. "The diſgrace will be my death."

"I ORDERED him to attend the Divan, "and to announce his attendance to the Em- "peror by *Sherin*, who then was with me."

"Now, my friends, conſider the pangs "my afflicted heart felt; divided between "my duty on the one hand, and the affec- "tion of relationſhip on the other, for the "Nowian was nearly allied to me by blood. "It is poſſible that by this inſtance of ſeveri- "ty, I may have offended all the Monga-

" lians, whom the name of a *Tſhengide* al-
" lured from the fartheſt boundaries of the
" Eaſt, and whoſe love I ſhould cheriſh as
" the chief ſupport of my throne. Yet how
" could I otherwiſe act? Can any thing be
" advantageous which is not juſt?"

ZENO replied, " In my country no name
" or title, how great ſoever, can ſcreen a
" culprit from the rigour of the law. One
" of my anceſtors who had been the ſaviour
" of his country, by whoſe valour alone, as
" all confeſſed, the victorious arms of Genoa
" had been vanquiſhed: Yet he committing
" a trivial fault (if a fault it was) was not
" ſheltered by his laurels from a rigorous
" puniſhment. He was firſt impriſoned,
" afterwards baniſhed and excluded from all
" the rewards his ſervices had merited. Such
" ſeverity, continued *Zeno*, is unavoidable,
" and the Emperor has this day ſecured his
" throne; for the hearts of his ſubjects is
" the only baſis on which a Prince can
" ſafely found his authority."

AT Com *Dſhunied* paid homage to the tombs of the *Imamſades*, the poſterity of *Ali* buried in this city, and whom that Prince reckoned amongſt the number of his anceſtors. USONG viſited the artiſts, and was pleaſed at

at the perfection to which they had arrived in making arms out of the hardeſt ſteel.

KASWIN, a principal city of the renowned *Parthia*, was then much decayed. USONG reflected on the beſt method of reſtoring it to its antient ſplendor, and for that purpoſe he propoſed to make it his reſidence for a certain time. He cenſured the cuſtom of the eaſtern Princes, who fix their conſtant reſidence in one city, whereby the remote provinces are deprived of ſubſiſtence and inhabitants, and thus an enormous head is given to the empire which deprives the ſeveral members of all their vital juices.

NEAR Sultania the Emperor ſaw part of thoſe ſtuds erected here by the Parthian kings, on account of the rich paſture-grounds and clear ſprings, for which that region is eminently diſtinguiſhed. But far more delightful were the ſpacious plains that lead from Aderbeitſhan to Tabris, where unbounded meadows are covered with the richeſt herbage, that hath from thence been tranſplanted in the weſt, and wherein thouſands of the fineſt Perſian ſteeds were fed.

TABRIS was at that time the largeſt city in the empire, but like all other Perſian cities, deſtitute of fortifications. USONG ſeeing it thus defenceleſs and expoſed to the

Turkiſh arms, ordered it to be fortified, and part of his heavy artillery to be placed therein. He likewiſe fixed upon a place for his imperial reſidence, and made the neceſſary preparations for erecting a palace. He made a ſhort tour to Amadan, formerly the ſeat of the Medean Empire, but now a large ruinous village.

He now came to Irwan, a frontier town, which was ſtill more than Tabris expoſed to the Ottoman arms. Here he planned a fortification, conſiſting of treble Ramparts, which towering above the city were ſituated upon the road leading to mountains covered with ſnow, whereon, according to vulgar tradition, the Ark firſt reſted, in which the ſecond author of the human race eſcaped the deluge.

Here in the weſtern parts of the empire ſeveral complaints were preferred againſt the Emperor's Delegate, who relying upon his diſtance from court, was unapprehenſive of puniſhment, and had accepted of preſents as well as recommended incapable perſons for the adminiſtration of juſtice. Usong knew the depravity of mankind too well to expect that his choice would always fall upon the moſt meritorious. He left to *Sherin* the examination of the complainants charges,

charges, and to draw up in the cuſtomary manner, the ſentence and reaſons on which it was founded, for the inſpection of the Emperor. The Delegate was found guilty, and USONG, convinced of his delinquency, ordered him to be ſummoned before the Divan.

SHERIN now promoted to the higheſt poſt by the command of USONG, addreſſed the culprit thus: "Thou waſt the Emperor's "confidant, he is not like God, poſſeſſed of "intuitive perception, but muſt ſee through "the eyes of other men. From thee he "expected to hear the truth in faithfulneſs; "as thou waſt exalted to the high dignity "of an advocate for the people, thou ſhould-"eſt have laid their complaints before the "throne, and thus have enjoyed the com-"fort of being inſtrumental in relieving "their diſtreſſes. But what doth that Phy-"ſician merit, who commanded to admi-"niſter a balſamic healing medicine, deals "out in its ſtead a deadly poiſon to his "patients? The Emperor orders thee "hence, fly to Kerman and never again ſet "foot within this province, for there alone "doth the law permit thee to languiſh out "thy forfeited life."

FROM Irwan USONG haſtened to Mauſel, formerly the capital of Aſſyria, and from thence to Anah, the utmoſt extent of his journey. Here infinite numbers aſſembled round his Divan, and their ſhouts in praiſe of this illuſtrious Emperor, aſcended Heaven's triumphial arch and made its conclave ring. Amongſt his antient ſubjects at Anah not one was to be found who did not think his own happineſs advanced by the exaltation of his ſovereign. Each antient ſervant, each citizen preſſed devoutly forward, content could they but kiſs the hem of their Prince's garment. USONG was affected by this cordial teſtimony of his people's love, and reſolved to uſe his beſt endeavours to render himſelf more worthy of their attachment.

THE Arabian Princes, his companions in the conqueſt of Perſia, viſited him, and he diſtributed rich preſents amongſt them; even the aged *Abuſhir* came to repeat his thankfulneſs to the noble USONG; but the devout *Haſſan* alone was abſent, he was too far advanced in the vale of years to undergo the fatigue of ſuch a journey. USONG ordered Anah, the ford of the Euphrates, to be put in a poſture of defence, and here he took leave of *Dſhuneid* and of *Zeno*, who travelled together

together to Palmyra. He diſmiſſed *Zeno* with his anſwer to the Republic, wherein he confidentially acquainted him that he would keep a watchful eye upon the Ottomans, ſet bounds to their all-graſping views, and continue ever a faithful ally to Venice. He loaded *Zeno* with preſents, conſiſting of rich Silks, coſtly Carpets, precious balſamic Mummy * that oozes from the rocks of Khoraſſan; genuine Bezoar Stones, and oil of Roſes, the produce of Shiras, which exceeds in value the pureſt gold, Turquoiſes from the antient rock of Firuz-cuh, Bahrein pearls, fine horſes, and curious ſabres of the beſt ſteel; and in a parting embrace the Emperor ſaid, "USONG will ever remain that friend "to *Zeno* he was at Alkahirah." The amiable *Dſhuneid* he likewiſe diſmiſſed with the tendereſt expreſſions of his love. "Tell "the ſervant of the moſt high God, tell "*Haſſan* that USONG is his ſon, and thy "brother." The friends thus ſeparated, and USONG croſſed the Euphrates in his way to Bagdad.

THIS former ſeat of the powerful leaders of the faithful, had been partly ruined by

* Muminahi, or native Perſian Mummy, a liquor of admirable properties; a farther account of it occurs in Kempferi Amœnitat. Exotic. p. 516, &c.

Hulaku,

Hulaku, and entirely laid waſte by his vicious ſucceſſors. But its ſituation as commanding the Tigris, and being well adapted for a barrier to the South-weſt part of Perſia; theſe advantages induced the Emperor to fortify it in the ſtrongeſt manner, and garriſon it with a numerous body of native Perſians.

He now proceeded to Baſora, the ſeat of the Empire's naval commerce; he inquired what merchants came thither, what goods they imported from the Eaſt, and what returns they in exchange exported from Perſia. He received many plans for rendering Perſia formidable by ſea, and he hoped one day to gain the ſuperiority in the gulph. He ſaw the diſadvantage of having no ſhips of their own, the Perſians thereby depending ſolely for trade upon foreigners, who not only parted with their own wares at exorbitant prices, but alſo obliged the Perſians to ſell their commodities conſiderably under the value, the Empire having no other method of exporting its natural or artificial productions. But Usong had too much prudence to undertake every neceſſary regulation at once, and his ſucceſſors have been prevented from augmenting Perſia's naval force by its rival, the Portugueſe.

From

FROM Baſora the Emperor went to Jondiſabur, formerly the ſeat of the ſciences under the Saſſanian Monarchs, but now become a deſart, and from thence to Suſter, the magnificent reſidence of the powerful *Ahaſuerus*. He haſtened through Tſhahelminar to Shiras, in order that he might be preſent at the Empreſſes delivery.

SHE brought forth a daughter, whom he named NUSHIRWANI in token of the veneration he felt for that wiſe Emperor, whom in all things he had propoſed for his model—a Prince equitable in peace, victorious in war, attentive to every thing that appertained to the public welfare; ſuch *had* been NUSHIRWAN, and ſuch now *was* USONG.

THE birth of NUSHIRWANI, and two Princes after her, ſenſibly impaired the Empreſs's delicate conſtitution. Her frame was tender, correſponding herein with the gentleneſs of her temper. LIOSUA's health declined daily, but ſhe diſguiſed her indiſpoſition, and her whole deportment beſpoke that compoſed reſignation congenial to her gentle nature. She once intreated the Emperor to accompany her abroad, when ſhe ſhewed him her Silk-worm nurſeries, her Porcelain furnaces, her painted Cotton manufactory, and all other inſtitutions which flou-

flouriſhed under her auſpicious patronage. USONG ſaw with pleaſure that nature, unaſſiſted by art, was ſufficient to rear ſo precious an inſect, and bring its labour to a ſtate of utility. He eſtimated with a penetration peculiar to himſelf, that Silk by this invention would ſoon become cheaper, and that the Perſians would prefer it to that of other nations. He ordered his Delegates to make known this invention throughout the empire, and in the provinces beſt adapted for the purpoſe, he ſettled ſome of the Chineſe artiſts to teach the Perſians the method of improving upon this ſpontaneous gift of nature.

HE was equally delighted with the beautifully painted Cottons, which in fineneſs far exceeded all the weſtern Manufactures, and whoſe glowing colours were inimitable. By way of example, USONG himſelf wore them in ſummer garments, and the people, happy in copying their adored Emperor, adopted the faſhion, and thus the conſumption became ſo great that an additional number of Chineſe hands were ſent for to ſupply the demand. Perſia hereby gained immenſe ſums which formerly had been laviſhed on Muſulipatan and Surat.

THE

"THE uſeful cotts my charming LIOSUA "has erected," ſaid USONG, embracing her with tenderneſs, "are far more advantage- "ous to the Empire than the ſtupendous "columns of Tſhehelminar, or the lofty "pyramids of Giza; the excellence of any "thing conſiſts in its utility, and that "Prince beſt immortalizes his name who "promotes a ſpirit of induſtry amongſt his "people. For was a Queen of Peris * to "laviſh upon me great ſtores of the fineſt "gold and richeſt diamonds it would be a "childiſh folly to think that I could render "the Perſians happy by making them rich "and exempting them from labour. I wiſh "my people wealthy, but I wiſh that wealth "to be procured by induſtry. My LIOSUA "enriches Perſia by introducing new arts "and ſaving vaſt ſums to the Empire."

THE Empreſs poſſeſſed every intellectual excellence in perfection; ſhe ſoon became miſtreſs of the Perſian language, and having perceived an affinity between the Poetry of *Saadi* and the Philoſophy of the Chineſe ſages, ſhe cauſed a monument to be erected to the memory of this Mora-

* Of the Mahometan Fairies.

liſt,

liſt, who was buried near Shiras, and ordered an Epitaph in his praiſe to be engraven on a Marble Obeliſk. She alſo appointed a learned Mollah to attend his Tomb, and daily read ſome of the Bard's ſublimeſt verſes to the youths aſſembled, and in elucidations of his own, to win them to a love of virtue, and charm them with its attractive graces.

End of BOOK II.

USONG.

BOOK III.

USONG loved peace, becauſe he loved his ſubjects: but the honour of Perſia was ſtill dearer to him, ſince without that no peace could long exiſt. He now ſaw himſelf compelled to take up arms; *Zeno* had been detained at Halep, by a rapacious Governor belonging to the new Soldan of Egypt, who, in defiance of the Deputy whom USONG had appointed to conduct him to Venice, had ill-treated *Zeno*, and plundered him of the greateſt part of thoſe preſents he was carrying to the Republic. Notwithſtanding all the remonſtrances made by the Emperor's Deputy, no other conceſſion was obtained from the Circaſſian Robber, than that *Zeno*, half-plundered, ſhould be releaſed, and permitted to depart.

USONG could not ſuffer this inſult offered to an Ambaſſador of a friendly State, who tra-

travelled under his protection, to pass unrevenged. He dispatched *Merwan*, a Captain of the Guard, a sedate, intrepid Persian, to Alkahirah, who represented to the newly-elected Soldan, *Ol Malek ot Thaher*, that Persia and Egypt were connected by the ties of nature, both having one common enemy in the Ottomans; that the friendly alliance between Persia and Venice had no other object in view, than to form a counterbalance to the increasing power of this enterprizing Empire. All that USONG required was, that the Soldan should disavow the insult, and censure the conduct of his Governor, as a flagrant act of injustice, in which he had no concern.

THE Governor of Halep was one of the four-and-twenty Princes, who, from mere Slaves, were now become Governors of Egypt. He was much esteemed by the other Princes, and had been greatly instrumental in the Soldan's elevation. This enthroned Slave had neither courage nor inclination to chastise his friend. He for a long time returned no reply to the Emperor's Envoy; at length he made an excuse for the plunder of *Zeno*, which amounted to almost as great an insult as the deed itself. In the Egyptian Court no Councils were regularly established:

bliſhed: The Soldan ſpared but a few moments of his voluptuous life on the affairs of State, and then precipitately took any reſolution haſtily ſuggeſted by his Eunuchs, or ſome formidable Bey.

MIRWAN returned in haſte to Shiras, and USONG, though much averſe to ſhedding his people's blood, made the neceſſary preparations for war. The Kurdes, inhabiting tents, were rouzed to vengeance; a choſen body of Georgian Cavalry repaired to the camp at Tabris. The Emperor joined them with one half of the Perſian troops, together with thoſe few companies he himſelf had trained to the uſe of fire-arms. This ſelect army rendezvouſed in the fertile plains of Aderbeitſhan; USONG led it through Erbil and Merdin, towards Halep, and threw Orfa, one of the Soldan's towns, into conſternation. *Dſhuneid* haſtened, with ſome volunteer Arabs, to his valourous friend's aſſiſtance.

THE antient Circaſſians had indeed been enervated by the voluptuouſneſs of Egypt. But as every year freſh ſwarms of Nogajans, Crimeans, Georgians, and Circaſſians, had recruited the Mameluke's army, this ſavage people maintained that ſpirit of national bravery, which is the genuine characteriſtic of men, untainted by luxury.

THE

THE Soldan advanced with a powerful army, a large train of artillery, and a multitude of legions, expert in the uſe of fire-arms.

USONG knew his Perſians well: This ingenious and ſpirited people, extremely ſuſceptible of a ſenſe of honour, bravely attack a foe, but are ſoon diſcouraged by misfortune. Having poſted himſelf advantageouſly, he daily ſent out detachments of cavalry to riſk ſome trifling ſkirmiſhes; in which the Perſians, by their ſabres, and ſuperior ſkill, always proved victorious. Thus he inſpired a confidence into his army, and intimidated the enemy. He daily marched his troops out of camp, and formed them in a line of battle; the Egyptians did the ſame; but before an action could commence, USONG withdrew them into his camp again; which, being fortified by ramparts, and defended by heavy artillery, ſecured it from every attack. For ten days ſucceſſively did he thus alternately draw out his forces and retreat, till at length the Circaſſians, accuſtomed to theſe unmeaning manœuvres, made ſport of the Perſians when drawn up in battle array. But on the eleventh day, when the Mamelukes were lulled into a fatal ſecurity, USONG marched out his forces two hours before

before the ſun aroſe, and no ſooner had its firſt glittering rays appeared, than he gave the ſignal for attack. Perſia's emblem was the riſing ſun. USONG addreſſed the Commanders of his Army: "Bear in mind, "my friends, ſaid he, that Perſia's eyes are "fixed upon you, that ſhe records your "deeds, and will reward them with ever-"laſting fame." The word given was *Perſia's honour:* The Perſians flaming with new-kindled fire, ruſhed upon their unprepared enemies; ſeveral thouſands fell, the reſt abandoning upper Syria and Halep *, left the Conqueror to take poſſeſſion of thoſe places.

USONG led his victorious army through the fineſt Aſiatic provinces towards Syria; he had no intention of weakening Egypt, as he conſidered that Empire as a barrier to Perſia. He heard with pleaſure that deputies were diſpatched from Alkahirah, with propoſals of peace. USONG demanded no more after the victory he had gained, than what he had before required. The governor of Halep was accordingly degraded from his dignity, and from the rank he held amongſt the four and twenty Princes: *Zeno*'s valuable effects were alſo collected and reſtored. A

* Bizarro has related this victory.

ſecond

ſecond ſtipulation inſiſted on by the Emperor was, that his intercourſe with Venice ſhould for the future be carried on through the Soldan's ſea-ports and dominions, without any hindrance or moleſtation to either goods or perſons. That part of Algezira which had been conquered remained in the poſſeſſion of the Perſians.

USONG had now attained his end; the honour of Perſia was vindicated, and that important object had been gained without much blood-ſhed. He was not deſirous of enlarging his dominions, for Perſia was ſufficient to gratify an ambition more immenſe than that of USONG's. He releaſed the priſoners and withdrew his army into the delightful plains near Tabris; but before he diſmiſſed them, he diſtributed rich preſents among the Princes, Officers, and private men. He made ſtrict inquiries concerning every gallant exploit that had been performed, and left none unrewarded; he perſonally addreſſed thoſe who had ſignalized themſelves, thanked them in the name of Perſia, and the commanders were directed to report to the troops the Emperor's intire approbation of their conduct.

USONG haſtened with rapture to the arms of his LIOSUA, and found the Chineſe colony

colony much augmented by an addition of new Artiſts. The meſſenger had returned, and brought with him letters from the wife LIEWANG. This moſt excellent *Zongtu* had reſigned all his employments and retired to Kiofoe, the place of nativity of his anceſtor, the renowned *Kong-fu-zee*, where, as he ſaid, in the practice of Philoſophic Piety, he would wait with reſignation for Death's awful ſummons; he intimated that corruption daily gained ground at court.

YNG ZONG was an infant; the Tartars ravaged the empire, and the Emperor himſelf was ſoon after, in one deciſive battle, taken priſoner by the Mongalians, and carried away captive into Tartary. LIEWANG therefore foreſaw the total ruin of the empire, which, though not finally compleated till many years after, was yet apparent from the cauſes which were then already active and irremediable.

NEWS alſo arrived from TIMURTASH, who had the greateſt ſhare in the victories obtained over the Chineſe. "But the welfare of USONG gives me more heart-felt "joy than the moſt illuſtrious victories," was the language of the affectionate parent.

ABOUT this time, an Arab of renown arrived with a letter from the venerable

Haſſan, which he had in charge to deliver into the Emperor's own hands. The aged *Alid* congratulated the ſon of his tender love, on all the good the proclaiming world related of him. "One thing only, ſaid he, "is wanting to carry USONG's plan of "arrangement to perfection. *Haſſan* don't "find that any thing has been done for religion. The Meſchides* are deſerted, the "voice of exhortation is not heard, the people are in this reſpect ſavages, they ſeem "to have forgotten not only the Prophet, "but even God himſelf."

USONG had the profoundeſt veneration for the Supreme Being, and though no believer in the Prophet's miracles, yet he thought the world much indebted to *Mahomet* for having overthrown idolatry and taught the people to adore one only God. USONG had not forgotten public worſhip; as a wiſe Monarch he was well perſuaded that religion is the firmeſt tie of human ſociety, that it connects mankind together in a brotherhood, induces a people to obey their Sovereign, whom they are taught to conſider as God's vicegerent. In China alſo, USONG had been thoroughly convinced, that with-

* Moſques.

out

out a religious dread of the Sovereign of the univerſe, men, though adepts in exterior virtue, would want a counterpoiſe to moderate their unruly appetites.

THE complaints of *Haſſan* were well founded; but USONG had experienced the impoſſibility of finding worthy Miniſters to perform ſervice to the Deity. He had ſeen in Perſia no colleges wherein religious teachers could be properly educated, nor could he meet with one Iman, whoſe learning and morals were adequate to the high dignity of a ſuperintendant of Divine Worſhip.

USONG earneſtly intreated the venerable *Alid*, that he himſelf would endeavour to make practicable the plan which he recommended with ſo much zealous piety; that he would chooſe from amongſt the moſt religious Arabs a certain number to preſide at the ſacred functions in the principal Meſchides throughout the different towns, and alſo that he would ſelect ſuch men of learning and virtue, as were qualified to inſtruct the Perſian youth in religious knowledge, and the other uſeful and ornamentary branches of ſcience; for the Emperor knew the vaſt utility of forming the minds and hearts of the people. He concealed not from

the pious *Haſſan*, that the ſole aim he had in view, was to promote the worſhip of the one only God, without regarding the difference among the ſects of believers. He conjured his ancient friend to let his choice fall on thoſe men only, whoſe chief view was to gain a knowlege of the true God, and to practice holineſs fearful of his wrath. He cenſured not the innocent rites and religious ablutions preſcribed, but he deemed it a ſpecies of childiſh folly to believe that God could be placated by ceremonies which even the moſt depraved minds could rigidly obſerve.

In the interim he cauſed the Meſchides in the different towns to be repaired and rendered fit for the reception of religious votaries. He ordered ſearch to be made after men of ſanctity, who on ſtated holidays might read to the people ſuch paſſages of the Koran as the Mollah *Abdul* of Tabris * and the Mollah *Mahomet Raze Emuni*, his diſciple, had deſigned for the purpoſe, and wherein the eminent perfections of the Deity, the obligations we lay under of conforming to his will, and the means of accompliſhing ſo

* This inſtitution has ſince been continued by the followers of Alid.

deſirable

deſirable an end, are diſtinctly demonſtrated. He permitted theſe readers to ſupply from natural divinity and morality, ſuch arguments as were not urged in the Koran, and the believers were ſtrictly enjoined to repeat each day the five prayers allotted for the purpoſe.

Usong ſettled a competent proviſion on the Miniſters employed about divine ſervice, a tenth part of the Land-tax was allotted for their maintenance; but the Emperor would neither inveſt them with any judical authority (as was the cuſtom amongſt the Ottomans) nor would he permit them to be exempted from a dependance on the ordinary tribunals.

In the hiſtories of Europe he had ſeen the deplorable conſequences, occaſioned by the error of the Nazarene Princes, in ſuffering the Eccleſiaſtics to form a diſtinct order of the ſtate, whereby they were tempted to graſp at ſovereign power; and thus impoveriſhing the people, deſtroying all political liberty, had at length become ſo daringly audacious, as to depoſe thoſe Princes who were for ſetting bounds to the ſuperſtitious obedience exacted by the ſovereign Pontiff. The chief Mollah in the Emperor's Meſchide was leſs the head of the Perſian clergy,

than the Emperor's ſuperintendant of that body.

HASSAN now alſo experienced the difficulty of finding men whoſe hearts were penetrated with the truth their mouths daily uttered; but he proceeded as far as the general corruption would permit; he choſe the moſt exemplary amongſt the prieſts, and invited from the ſolitary retreats, thoſe who had altogether dedicated themſelves to ſublime meditation, and the ſmall number which he found fit for his purpoſe, after examining them himſelf, he ſent to the Emperor, who eſtabliſhed them in the royal Meſchides throughout the principal cities of the Empire. Moſt of them were *Alids* of the race of *Hoſſein*, the Prophet's daughter's ſon, and for a long time afterwards they continued in poſſeſſion of the higheſt eccleſiaſtical dignities.

USONG met with more ſucceſs in eſtabliſhing public ſchools in the different towns. The Perſians are ingenious, and by nature aptly diſpoſed to ſuch ſciences as have wit, morals, or calculation for their objects. This empire has in every age been famed for producing ſublime Poets, profound Moraliſts, and illuſtrious Aſtronomers. USONG founded alſo ſuperior colleges, wherein men of

of diſtinguiſhed abilities, and even ſome ennobled Perſians * preſided and compleated the inſtruction of youths, who on their parts were anxious to acquire knowledge, and to enrich their minds with their tutor's precepts. The Emperor's perſonal inſpection, and his readineſs to prefer the beſt and moſt docile proficients, gave life and vigor to all his arrangements. He cauſed the pupils to undergo a public examination in the ſciences to which they had addicted themſelves, and the queſtions propoſed were caſually diſtributed to each by lot. USONG generally himſelf preſided at theſe examinations, but when abſent, a Delegate was deputed in his ſtead. An account of the behaviour and manner in which the ſtudents acquitted themſelves, was regiſtered in the preſence of the audience, and he who had thrice deſerved an honourable teſtimonial was ſure of ſpeedy promotion. Out of this number the Judges were choſen, who after a cloſe attendance of three years in the neareſt courts, underwent another rigid public examination, and if approved, were then ſeated upon the bench. The Emperor revolved in his mind the Chineſe eſtabliſhments, but he was

* See Chardin's Travels.

ſtrictly careful to prevent, that corruption and bribery might not artfully procure to ignorance or incapacity, that reputation which ſhould be the reward only of real merit.

USONG pleaſed himſelf with the hopes that the preſence of ſo many inquiſitive Perſians, their known acuteneſs in perceiving and animadverting on errors, together with the public trials made of the Students abilities, would all conſpire to prevent the influence of favour and venality. Each Judge, each Delegate, muſt feel conſcious ſhame ſhould he ſign, before ſuch a number of competent witneſſes, teſtimonials of the Pupil's merit, as were not ſtrictly conformable to truth. It was a prevailing maxim with the Emperor moſt ſeverely to puniſh whoever attempted to impoſe on him, and in the caſe before recited, an impoſition could not poſſibly eſcape detection, ſince the inhabitants of a whole city inſpected, with attentive eyes, the public examination of each candidate. The lots alſo prevented every ſpecies of undue partiality, they were drawn at eve, and by the morning ſun-riſe, the examination commenced.

USONG founded alſo other ſeminaries of learning, of which no nation had afforded an

an example. He erected ſpacious buildings* in which various artificers reſided who were penſioned by the Emperor and worked only for the court. He prefered thoſe arts which diſplay more of genius and invention, to ſuch as are carried to perfection by the dint of mechanic habit merely. He patronized Painters and Architects. Here were apartments for ſuch artificers as prepared ſteel and braſs implements of war for the Emperor's uſe; others again imitated in ſilk the fineſt coloured natural flowers; others ſet with fancied elegance the gems of Hindoſtan and the Perſian pearls; ſome wove the matchleſs velvets, others gave to ſilk and wool a colour, which for durable brightneſs, infinitely excelled that of the experienced Europeans. The moſt ſkilful of theſe artiſts were richly paid, and received the price of their labour without any deduction; they were beſides aſſured of a continuance of the Emperor's bounty during life. By theſe wiſe regulations Perſia acquired not only a conſiderable number of eminent Artiſts, but alſo a diſtinguiſhed Academy, which ſerved as a ſchool for the whole Empire, and for many ages after USONG's

* Chardin's deſcription of Iſpahan.

death ſhe enjoyed the fruits of his ſagacity. The Perſians are not naturally inventive, that eaſy acceſs they have to the luxuries of life, relaxes all endeavours to improve their talents; hence foreign inventors, and the more enterprizing Europeans were called in, whoſe examples ſerved to ſtimulate and direct their happy genius for imitation. Proficients who excelled in the different arts were alſo borrowed from ſeveral other countries.

THUS the Perſians were enabled to carry ſeveral Arts to the greateſt degree of perfection; the richeſt Gold-brocade is to this day wrought amongſt them. At Yezd, they made ſtuffs, an inch of which was valued at twenty-four* ounces of ſilver. Perſian Carpets are deemed ornaments in all countries of the world, and as for its porcelain, in hardneſs, tranſparency, and lively colours, it far exceeded that of Chingteching. The Perſian turners and tanners, their pewter and copper veſſels, their arms, bows and ſteel works, ſoon obtained the preference throughout all the Eaſt. Their ſilks became the richeſt article of their manufactures. The annual produce of its exports brought into the Empire 420,000 pounds of ſilver. Theſe different reſources replaced the ſums that were

* Chardin's Travels.

were ſent to other countries to purchaſe real neceſſaries, or thoſe ſuperfluous articles which luxury converts into neceſſaries, and thus the Empire increaſing in riches, enriched at the ſame time its ſovereign.

NOR did things merely entertaining eſcape the Emperor's attention. He ordered royal gardens to be laid out at Shiras, and afterwards at Tabris and Iſpahan; lofty rows of trees, called Tſhinars, forming an agreeable ſhade, pure aqueducts, high-jetting fountains, and the choiceſt fruit trees were provided for the pleaſure and refreſhment of the people, and orders were iſſued that no Perſian ſhould be denied entrance into theſe gardens, or the uſe of the fruit planted for the people's enjoyment *.

PERSIA gradually perceived its increaſing proſperity, and the moſt pleaſing accounts arrived from every province. The ſubterraneous conduits, which may be called Perſia's Nile, and deprived of which the whole Country would be a burning Waſte, were thoroughly repaired. By an art peculiar to the Perſians, and which neceſſity had taught them in great perfection, they conſtructed canals twelve fathoms underground, which

* Della Valle, T. II.

continued for the diſtance of one whole day's journey. Several freſh ſprings had alſo been diſcovered in the mountainous parts of Perſia, that rendered large tracts of land fertile, which had long lain barren and uncultivated. The plains ſurrounding the Bendemir, the Senderud, and other Perſian rivers, were now converted into immenſe gardens; the imbibing ſoil having ſucked in the fertilizing waters. Theſe lands continued not long without inhabitants; numbers came from other countries, tranſported with joy at the thought of living under ſo mild a government. The books in which the tributary lands were rated, according to the number and order of the Water-ducts, daily increaſed with the number of Perſia's Citizens, and both the revenue of the Empire, and the happineſs of the ſubjects, were mutually augmented.

USONG reſolved on another journey, attended both with difficulty and danger; but what this Prince conſidered as a duty, no difficulty, no toil, no danger, could tempt him to diſpenſe with. He forthwith proceeded towards Kerman, a province ſo deſtitute of water, as to be little better than a vaſt deſart, where the roads were apt to be covered with ſands, wafted each inſtant by the

the winds along the arid waſte. What water USONG wanted he was obliged to have carried on camels; but, that no thirſty Traveller after him ſhould endure what he had himſelf encountered, he gave orders for digging the few ſprings that drippingly iſſued from ſome adjacent rocks; and for public reſting places to be erected, near where the water dropped, according to the Eaſtern cuſtom. He alſo cauſed colonades of lofty pillars to be placed, in ſuch rows as might beſt point out to the diſcerning Traveller the path he was to follow. After being ſeventeen days expoſed to the ſcorching ſunbeams, and deprived of even common conveniences, he reached Kerman, a ſcattered village.

HIS benevolent intentions were ſpeedily accompliſhed: This Country, entirely a Deſart, ſoon became cultivated and inhabited; the Guebers abandoned the diſtricts of the Patans* and Baluſhes†, to enjoy a tranquil life under USONG's protection. By theſe peoples induſtry the earth was cultivated, and ſoon aſſumed the appearance of a well-improved garden. The deſart itſelf

* A People in the mountains betwixt Perſia and Multan.

† A People betwixt Kerman and Sind.

was

was ſeen covered over with the fleecy tribe, large flocks of whom, feeding on freſh herbage, dropped their ſoft wool, and thus afforded Perſia a new ſource of wealth, nearly equal to that of ſilks: For the light ſtuffs manufactured from this wool was held in as high repute, as the richeſt Perſian ſilks. With pleaſure USONG alſo found, that fine earthern-ware was manufactured here.

A DISPUTE which aroſe between the Emperor's Delegate and the Banians, required USONG's interpoſition. The Delegate had ſummoned this antient people to take arms in their appointed turns, and go through the uſual exerciſe like other ſubjects: The Banians are averſe to bloodſhed, and conſequently abhor arms, and all the implements of war. USONG called to mind their great utility as ſubjects, and choſe not to force them to perform a duty, repugnant to their conſciences. "Never, ſaid the "gracious Emperor, muſt we reduce men "to the temptation of preferring their tem-"poral to their eternal welfare." He diſpenſed, therefore, with this pacific people's bearing arms, in conſideration of a ſmall poll-tax, which was diſtributed amongſt thoſe Perſians who had alone the charge of performing military duties. The Banians,

in

in grateful return for this indulgence, threw themſelves at USONG's feet, and reverenced the worthy Succeſſor of *Cyrus* and *Guſtaſpus*.*

FROM Kerman USONG paſſed through other ſuch ſandy waſtes, and came to Gomron. He ſaw the Hengiſe ſhrub †, and the patient Gueber ‡ daily ſevering a piece from the root, which gave that delicious juice ſo much eſteemed in India, and ſhortly became a new ſource of riches to the Perſians. But USONG, though inurred to hardſhips, could not withſtand the peſtilential influence of the ſultry air, the fetid waters, and the poiſonous exhalations from the ſubterraneous caverns. He was ſeized at Gomron with a dangerous fever, at the time when he propoſed to viſit the Pearl Fiſhery at Bahrein. The languid Emperor was inſtantly removed to the palm-groves, at the foot of the mountains Genau and Gerun, where the air is ſalubrious; ſtreams of the pureſt water enrich the ſoil, and one eternal ſpring adds beauty to the face of nature. He could ſcarcely breathe when carried to this balmy

* Darius, the ſon of Hydaſpes.

† Otherwiſe called Hiltit, from whence the Hing, or Aſſa Foetida, is extracted. See Chardin's Travels.

‡ The name of the ancient Perſians.

region;

region; but the ſkilful Phyſicians of Lar* ſoon cauſed the malignancy of the fever to abate, by means of the citrons of this warm climate, and the reviving juices of cooling melons. The change of air alſo gradually abated the fire which preyed on USONG's vitals.

THE Emperor's danger was ſoon rumoured through the Empire, and prattling fame ſoon buzzed about his death: All Perſia trembled at the irreparable loſs. For many generations had it ſuffered under cruel Monarchs, nor could the oldeſt Perſian living call to mind a Prince, who had not played the brutal Tyrant; and ſhould they now looſe their darling Emperor, the firſt years of whoſe reign was accounted only as the morning dawn, bright herald of a gladſome day, in which the all-enlivening ſun ſhould ſhed its proſperous rays on Perſia's happy Empire! Deploring mothers aſſembled their liſping infants to mourn with them: "We muſt depart into the vale of death "before you; but he, alas! is now no more, "who, when we were mingled with our "kindred duſt, would have been a tender "father to you all. And muſt he die—the

* Della Valle likewiſe praiſes them.

"juſt,

"juſt, the good, the wiſe Emperor? And "ſhall he, on whom God's image is ſtamped "conſpicuous, ſhall he be thus ſnatched from "us?" Such were the mournful lamentations which rung hroughout all Perſia; hundreds of Couriers were diſpatched from all parts of the Empire, to bring tidings of the Emperor's ſtate of health. The nerves of induſtry were ſuddenly unſtrung; an agonizing grief was pourtrayed in each Perſian's countetenance; and the nation was ſeized with a general panic, as if the awful day of judgment was at hand.

THE diſaſtrous tidings could not be kept ſecret from the Empreſs. "I will go, cried "ſhe, I will die with him." She could not be diſſuaded from undertaking a journey, the dangers of which no human efforts could alleviate. She was borne in a Palankin over pathleſs mountains, inacceſſible to either horſes or camels; and thus, without allowing herſelf the leaſt repoſe, ſhe journeyed along tremendous rocks, ſteep craggy precipices, and narrow ridges, that hung ſuſpended o'er a dark abyſs to mortals quite unfathomable. She drank the bitter waters, which parſimonious nature ſparingly affords; ſhe faced the ſcorching winds near Lar, which, like fiery ſerpents, oft ſmite the

Tra-

Traveller with inſtantaneous death; ſhe breathed the hot and ſuffocating fumes*, exhaled from the vapourous earth; and inhaled the ſaline aerial particles, which cauſe a moſt unquenchable thirſt. At Kureſtan ſhe croſſed the perilous Bendemir, which frequently ſwells in an inſtant, pours forth its torrents like the foaming ocean, and ingulphs in a few hours the whole adjacent country; ſhe arrived with incredible celerity at the Palm-groves, ſhe haſtened to embrace her yet feeble Conſort, "And now, "ſaid ſhe, will I live, as I again behold "my deareſt USONG."

THE Emperor's heart was too feelingly ſuſceptible not to be affected by his people's love; nor could he view, without the tendereſt emotions, the attachment of his beloved Conſort, which thus enabled her to combat every danger, and ſurmount every difficulty. Her endearing careſſes, her indefatigable care and efforts to procure him relief, ſeemed to impart new ſtrength to his drooping ſpirits; he recovered but by ſlow degrees, and, in a yet feeble ſtate, he was conveyed to Shiras.

HERE all Perſia aſſembled; each province deputed men of the greateſt note to wait upon

* Chardin's Travels.

the

the Emperor, and wiſh him a prolongation of thoſe happy days, which Perſia called its golden times. They brought the zealous offerings of the people's faithful hearts, and their loyalty was viſible in the chryſtal tears which trembled in their moiſtened eyes. Public rejoicings were univerſally obſerved, and ſhouts of thanks aſcended from the temples of the different Sectariſts to the health-giving Supreme.

SHERIN, the friend of USONG's early youth, had, with his fortune, adopted the Perſian cuſtoms; he kept a numerous Harem, peopled with the choiceſt Georgian and Circaſſian beauties, and in their ſenſual commerce found his chief felicity. From his inmoſt ſoul he loved the Emperor; and in one of thoſe evenings which USONG gave to ſocial converſe, *Sherin* begged permiſſion to aſk a ſingle queſtion.

"WHAT is there, replied the Emperor, "that USONG will not hear from *Sherin?* "Can I refuſe him any thing? Am I indeed "ſo much debaſed, that pride ſhould triumph "over my gratitude?" *Sherin*, proſtrating himſelf, ſaid, "Thanks be to *Tien* for the "reſtoration of Perſia's ſole comfort; our "thanks likewiſe we owe, for having granted heirs

" heirs to USONG's throne, in whom the " virtues of USONG and *Tſhengis* may one " day be united; but on few heads reſts the " tranquility of the world. In how ſhort a " time may the Abyſſinian malady blight the " young bloſſoms before they can bear fruit " for Perſia? Why doth the Emperor, in " his beſt of years, renounce a privilege en- " joyed by all the Eaſtern Monarchs, even " before the days of *Cyrus?* Why is the " hope of Perſia, and the world, confined to " one ſingle Conſort? Why not eſtabliſh the " race, no more of *Tſhengis*, but now of the " glorious USONG, by a numerous progeny " which nature ſeems to offer?"

" MY *Sherin*, replied the Emperor with " a ſmile, deſigns all this from real friend- " ſhip. His deſire is to ſee USONG as happy " as himſelf, but USONG is ſo already; " he finds more joy in the ſweet ſocial con- " verſe of one Charmer only, whoſe gentle " manners, refined genius, and polite edu- " cation, render her a companion far more " agreeable than the faireſt purchaſed Slaves, " inſtructed only in the fulſome arts of luſt- " ful dalliance.

" BUT *Sherin* is well verſed in the hiſtory " of the Chineſe revolutions; he knows the " ſad cataſtrophe which befel the formidable

Timur's

" *Timur*'s offsprings; he has ſeen with me " the ruins of the once ſuperb Palace of the " *Caliphs* at Bagdad; he with me alſo has " viſited the Weſtern Countries: *Sherin*, " therefore, may recollect, that during many " centuries, only one Royal Houſe* amongſt " the Nazarene Princes has been extermi- " nated by the ſword, and even that deed " was brought about by the implacable ran- " cour of an enthroned Prieſt. The Sove- " reigns of thoſe Countries die peaceably on " the Throne of their Anceſtors, or, like " the Capetian race, flouriſh through many " ſucceſſive ages in permanent proſperity.

" FREQUENTLY have I reflected why in " China, the civilized and ſcientific China, " why the twenty-firſt of the Imperial Race " ſhould now ſway the ſcepter? How ſo " many deified families, with all their nume- " rous progeny, could be deſtroyed by uſur- " pations? How an audacious ſervant of the " Bonzes could, with ſuch facility, dethrone " the *Tſhengides?* Theſe queſtions are equ- " ally applicable to the *Caliphs*, the *Gaſne-* " *wides*, and all the royal lines in Aſia, of " which not one has poſſeſſed the Throne " in tranquility for two whole centuries.

" THE Deſcendants of an Hero, whoſe " illuſtrious qualities raiſed his family to the

* Swabia.

" Throne,

" Throne, muſt have their Harem; and in
" the ſoft embraces of their purchaſed fair
" ones, they find an happineſs, which ſits
" lighter on their mind than the arduous
" taſk of attending to the welfare of a State.
" The Prince inſenſibly begins to ſlumber,
" but at times ſhakes off his drowſy fit, and
" calls up courage to leave his bewitching
" Charmer's fond careſſes; yet his ſon ſleeps
" ſounder, and the next Succeſſor falls into
" a torpid, lethargic ſtate, and then awakes
" no more. The Monarch, though far ad-
" vanced in years, continues his youthful
" follies; what ſhould be his recreation only
" becomes the buſineſs of his life. The
" Eunuchs, the Vizirs, the Officers of his
" Guard, borrowing the ſanction of his
" authority, govern in his ſtead: Oppreſ-
" ſions without number prevail, and abuſes
" the moſt intolerable are winked at by the
" corrupt Rulers. The injured ſubject finds
" no redreſs; never did he behold the Empe-
" ror's face; never was he cheared by the
" kind influence of his aſſiſting hand. Inſti-
" gated by jealouſy and fear, plans are con-
" certed to deſtroy even thoſe who ſhould
" attempt to protect their Country; whilſt
" the enfeebled Sovereign dares not place
" warlike Commanders at the head of his
" Army,

" Army, becauſe he dreads their influence.
" Thus every limb of government is maimed;
" the people's hearts are alienated from their
" Rulers: here a *Turk*, a *Buide*, ſtarts up
" the hereditary Sovereign of the once
" adored *Calliphus*; there a *Tſhue* dethrones
" the diſpirited *Tau-wang Timur*. Amongſt
" the warlike Uſbecks, one Deſcendant of
" the mighty *Timur* inhumanly deſtroys the
" other. Did not *Ulugbeg*, the wiſe, the
" amiable *Ulugbeg*, did not he lately fall
" inglorious by the hand of a deteſtable
" Parricide? Where then is the vaſt advan-
" tage of polygamy? Where the ſecurity in
" a numerous offspring?

" UNDER the inſtructions of wiſe and vir-
" tuous Tutors, and by the admonitions of
" his moſt accompliſhed mother, USONG
" hopes that the young *Dſhuneid* will prove
" a Prince ſo truly excellent, as to efface
" the memory of USONG in the hearts of his
" ſubjects. His race, it is hoped, will
" never be ſtained with a brother's blood;
" and, in USONG's opinion, the firmeſt Sup-
" porter of hereditary Right, is the good
" education of the Sovereign and his off-
" ſpring."

THE heart of *Sherin* was not convinced, the delicious poiſon of voluptuouſneſs had ſeduced

ſeduced it, but ſtill his underſtanding could ſuggeſt no anſwer. He hazarded another attack upon his illuſtrious friend; "How is "it poſſible, ſaid he, that the vigour of "USONG ſhould long reſiſt the toil he un- "dergoes? Will not his valued life be "ſhortened, and thus more hours be loſt "than he now permits himſelf to ſpend in "uſeful recreation? Is then the throne a "thorny ſeat whereon is no repoſe? and "muſt the Sovereign be deprived of every "earthly joy?"

"ALL theſe things, replied USONG, my "friend and I ſhould have conſidered pre- "vious to our leaving Anah; when ſoaring "on Hope's pinions, we made a daring "flight to the throne of Perſia, when we "graſped at ſway, and aimed at ruling over "millions of our ſpecies. 'Tis now too late "to ſhrink from a labour that is become a "duty; but to thee I will unfold the ſecret "workings of my heart; I feel not the "oppreſſive burden of loyalty, the crown "ſits eaſy on my brow; I regard each hour "as in grace beſtowed by the Supreme "Peing. They are precious drops from "time's boundleſs ocean, which I may taſte "indeed, but not ſquander away unthink- "ingly. Theſe hours are lent, I ſtand the

"Almighty's

"Almighty's debtor for them, to him I "am accountable for the uſe of that, with "which he has entruſted me. To aggrandize "my name, I feel no ſort of ambition; the "childiſh vanity of a poſthumous fame I "view in a light the moſt contemptible; "but the preſent hour ſhall be turned to "profit: each moment will I dedicate to "ſome good action; each thought ſhall "have for its object Perſia's welfare. "Thus in the morning, like the all-chear-"ing ſun, I riſe ſenſible of my influence "benign, and rejoice to run my courſe, in "hopes to mark it out by ſome illuſtrious "deed. At the ſober hour of reſt, tranquil "I recline, pleaſed by reflecting on the "cloſing day, and happy to ſee it diverſified "with many public beneficial actions. "Thus when decrepid age comes on, when "about to quit this ſublunary ſcene, with "calm content ſhall I look back on a paſt "well-ſpent life, and die without a pang. "I ſhall not then quit a barren deſart choak-"ed up with ſlothful, vicious weeds; I ſhall "leave an Eden of delights, in which I have "laboured with toilſome travel, to earn "thoſe fruits I owe as tributes to that Lord "from whom I hold my throne in vaſſa-"lage."

At length the Deputy whom Usong had ſent to accompany *Zeno* to the Weſt returned. He brought diſpatches from the Venetian Senate and from *Zeno*, intimating their increaſing apprehenſions at the new victories of the Ottomans. A young Nazarene Monarch, had waged ſucceſsful war againſt the aged *Morad*, and compelled him to ſue for peace. The pacific *Morad* had more readily concluded the treaty, being deſirous of fixing his ſon upon the Ottoman throne. The Chriſtian Monarch *, inſtigated by a puiſſant Prieſt, had broken the ſolemn treaty, and penetrated with his army as far as the Black Sea. The Janiſſaries not being acquainted with the young *Machmud*, ſuppoſed his arm too weak to cope with the valour of the martial *Hunniad* †; they therefore beſought *Morad* once more to head the Ottoman troops. *Machmud* modeſtly deſcended from the throne and fought under his Father's banners. In a pitched battle the Ottomans gave way,

* Uladiſlaus King of Poland and Hungaria.

† John Corvin Hunniad, general of the armies of Uladiſlaus, and one of the greateſt military men of his age. He defeated the Turks in ſeveral important battles, and obliged them to raiſe the ſiege of Belgrade. He died in 1456.

and

and *Morad*, perceiving himſelf on the brink of ruin, invoked the God on whom the Chriſtians called, to ratify the treaty they had ſworn to. He ſupplicated Heaven to ſhow ſome ſigns of its diſpleaſure, and thus deter other Princes from violating treaties bearing the ſanction of God's holy name. The Janiſſaries recovered from their panic, the Chriſtian King was ſlain, and the formidable *Hunniad* fell into the hands of the Turks*. After the victory, *Morad* again abdicated the throne in favour of his ſon, and thus the two Sultans afforded an illuſtrious inſtance, uncommon in the Eaſt, that filial duty may operate equally powerful with paternal love, and that both may ſhine ſuperior to a diadem.

THE young Turkiſh Monarch was born in the camp, and was as full of fire as his Father had been of moderation; he thirſted after fame and victory. It was therefore ſuppoſed that his firſt attempt would be to overthrow the Byzantine empire. Venice ſaw the thunder ſtorm approaching and renewed her application to the Emperor.

THE Republic ſent USONG new models for rendering Artillery ſtill more deſtruc-

* The battle of Varna.

tive, plans for the more expeditious management of ſmall arms, and a ſcheme for the conſtruction of Mortars, that threw out heavy Bomb-ſhells pregnant with fire and ruin. Some Armourers from Breſcia came with USONG's deputy, and they were ſettled in the Emperor's ſchool of arts; but the Perſians ſtill preferred their bows to fire-arms, in the make of which they excelled all other nations. "By theſe, they "ſaid, *Cyrus* has conquered Aſia; by theſe "the wiſe NUSHIRWAN has made the Roman "Empire tremble." They were ſtill more averſe to cannon, nor was it poſſible to reconcile them to its uſe.

NEWS ſtill more diſmal arrived from the Eaſt. The old intendant of the venerable LIEWANG arrived at Shiras, and forthwith repaired to his friend *Sherin Khan*. "I bring, "ſaid he, letters and packets for the Em-"peror, but previous to their delivery, pre-"pare his mind, and fortify LIOSUA's ſoul "for diſaſtrous tidings."

USONG was proof againſt dejection; but it required delicacy and caution to manage the Empreſs, whoſe health had been impaired by her fatiguing journey to the Palm-groves. She was therefore only told that LIEWANG was ill. "He is dead," cried the ſympathizing

thizing daughter, and fell half expiring on a ſofa. It was now in vain to conceal the ſad diſaſter from her. LIEWANG, rich in honours and in years, had died in the birth-place of the wiſe *Con-fu-zee*, which was alſo his native city: before his deceaſe he had ſent the table of his lineage to the Empreſs, "It is now her part, ſaid he, to pay due "homage to her great Progenitors; ſhe is "to me far more than any ſon." He ſent to the Emperor ſome writings of *Con-fu-zee* on the ſcience of government, with annotations of his own; and to the Empreſs ſome Chineſe rarities. "The *Tien*, ſaid he, "has deſtined USONG for illuſtrious pur-"poſes, why elſe is he endowed with gifts "of a moſt extraordinary nature? and why "doth he poſſeſs that rare virtue of making "all his ſhining qualities ſubſervient to the "welfare of mankind?" He aſſured the Empreſs of his unaltered love, and the name of LIOSUA was the laſt accent which hung on his faultering lips.

LIOSUA found, like other ſuſceptive ſouls, a woeful conſolation in brooding over the cauſe of her diſtreſs. She was inquiſitively anxious to know each circumſtance that had attended LIEWANG's deceaſe.

"Not *Con-fu-zee* himſelf, ſaid the intend-
"ant, was more calmly reſigned to fate;
"his ſtrength had long been much impair-
"ed, and it was conſpicuous to all who
"ſaw him, that the ruinous condition of the
"Empire, added to ſome ſecret corroding in
"his breaſt, deſtroyed his conſtitution more
"than even his years. On the morning of
"his laſt day, after a ſleepleſs night, he
"ordered the table of his lineage to be brought
"him from the hall of his anceſtor. He
"glanced over the many illuſtrious names,
"which during the ſpace of thirty genera-
"tions, had graced this table. When he came
"to the name of the renowned *Con fu-zee*,
"he ſtopped a moment with a complacent
"ſmile:" "My line ends, ſaid he, perhaps
"my male deſcendants might have tarniſh the
"glory of their Progenitors; but I leave
"behind me a daughter, who does honour
"to her anceſtors. Great God of Heaven!
"ſhower down thy choiceſt bleſſings on her
"head! She was a duteous child; piouſly
"did ſhe fulfil each filial obligation, and her
"life was formed upon the precepts of her
"wiſe Anceſtors."

"THE fervency with which this ejaculation
"was uttered quite ſpent the venerable ſage;
"the lamp of life burnt dim, he perceived it
"extinguiſh-

" extinguiſhing; " My days, ſaid he, in mut-
" tering accents, are at an end; thou, O
" *Tien!* beſt knoweſt whether my time has
" been employed in conformity to thy will;
" but then neither is the fragile nature of
" mortals hidden from thy ſight. Always to
" be wiſe is a perfection to which no mortal
" can attain; none of us reſemble the an-
" cient ſages whom thou haſt ſent us for
" patterns; but thou loveſt thoſe, good only
" in intention; O! let thy mercy ſhadow
" o'er my ſoul, and hide indulgent mine
" errors from thy ſight. Thus without
" fear, without perturbation of mind, without
" a pang or ſingle groan: like the mellow fruit
" of Litſhi, when nature parts it from the
" bending bough, or like the ſun deſcending
" to his weſtern bed, ſo LIEWANG expired."

LIOSUA, with the approbation of the Emperor, put on the deepeſt mourning. She cauſed an apartment to be fitted up with ſolemn pomp for the reception of the lineage table, the whole furniture of which came from China. Here ſhe removed her books, and hither almoſt daily ſhe reſorted to bemoan her loſs, and fill her mind with the noble examples of her illuſtrious anceſtors.

BUT USONG perceived that the affairs of the empire rendered his conſtant attention

indiſpenſably neceſſary, he therefore devoted each moment to the affairs of ſtate. "Dar-"ling of my ſoul, ſaid he, embracing with "tenderneſs his LIOSUA, recollect whilſt "indulging in thy griefs, that deprived of "thee, USONG cannot ſupport the heavy "load of life."

WITH LIEWANG's Intendant a learned Mandarin had come; he was deſcended from *Con-fu-zee*, but in indigent circumſtances. A Chineſe citizen at a foreign court is a ſingular phenomenon. USONG noticed the ſtranger, and thought him poſſeſſed of ſome engaging qualities, and in one of thoſe evenings which the Emperor paſſed in ſocial converſe, he aſked the Mandarin on what account he had left his civilized country, to ſeek refuge amongſt a people, whom from his earlieſt infancy, he muſt have been taught to look upon as barbarians.

OEL-FU replied, "Barbariſm cannot pre-"vail where USONG ſways the ſceptre. I "am a native of *Kio-foe*, the birth-place of "*Con-fu-zee*, in the province of Shang-tong. "I was taught the ſciences, and aſcended "by gradation to the uſual degrees; but I "muſt intreat the Emperor (continued he "in a moſt ſubmiſſive tone) if he has a de-"ſire to hear my ſtory, that he will allow

"me

"me to relate it without reſerve: Every "taſk impoſed I always thought too eaſy, "and the public examinations not ſuffici- "ently rigorous. The labour of a year I "could have wiſhed to diſpatch in a ſingle "hour, ſo eager was I to acquire that "knowledge, after which my ſoul thirſted. "I ſtrove to fulfil the twelve duties, and as "I writ much, I laboured to exalt virtue, "and recommend it as the ſureſt road to "permanent felicity. Though young, I ſoon "became famous, but was debarred prefer- "ment. When a vacancy happened in the "department of polite literature, I was then "ſuppoſed to be an Aſtronomer; if it hap- "pened in the civil department, then was I "accounted a Poet."

"At length a literary vacancy happened in "a province far diſtant from my native city. "I was appointed, though a ſtranger in the "place. I redoubled my ardour to gratify the "expectation the Zongtu had formed. I was "conſtituted a cenſor of books; I was to read, "abridge them, and mark ſuch as I approved. "A blue circle drawn round the Author's "name, denoted my cenſure, a red one ſigni- "fied my approbation.

"I acquitted myſelf according to the beſt "of my judgment; humanity inclined me to

" be ſparing of my blue pencil, and to uſe the " red oftener than ſtrict juſtice would warrant. " Yet it became known that I was the literary " cenſor, and all the learned joined in a com- " plaint againſt me: I was libelled from every " quarter, and ſo perſecuted with defences, " confutations and lampoons, that a friend " adviſed me either to throw aſide my pen- " cil, or at leaſt reject the cenſuring colour. " I wiſely choſe the former as the beſt alter- " native, and well it was I did ſo, for the " Zongtu who had promoted me to the office, " had reſolved to deprive me of it. " He " flatters, ſaid the rigid Sage, forgetful of that " duty he owes to the public."

" I THEN went into another province where " a ſuitable employment had been promiſed " me, but the Bonzes conſpired againſt me, " and the Zongtu was at their devotion. " The wretch is a downright Atheiſt, " exclaimed they, and raiſed a thouſand un- " heard-of calumnies againſt me; thus all " my hopes were in an inſtant vaniſhed.

" IN this ſituation my only comfort was " my conſcious innocence. I repaired to " Fokien where the Bonzes are deteſted. " The Zongtu was pleaſed to rank me " amongſt the number of his friends. I was " the companion of his evening hours; yet he " was himſelf an infidel, and believed not in

" *Tien*;

" *Tien*; he held no moral diſtinction between " good and evil, and as to any ſupreme Judge " of men, he diſclaimed the notion. Me he " deemed a follower of *Laoking* *, but not " chuſing to conceal the veneration with " which I adored *Tien*, and declaring that I " preferred virtue to vice, I loſt this ſtation " alſo. The Zongtu indulged his ſpleen ſo " far as to write againſt me in the fouleſt " language, though he was an entire ſtranger " to my writings."

" I NEXT reſorted to Pekin, where I was " employed in ſtate affairs, and entruſted with " papers of the utmoſt conſequence. I was " to defend the Emperor's right to the Iſles " *Liu Kiu*, in oppoſition to the claim of *Ni-* " *pon*. It now occurred to me, that I had ob- " tained the confidence of my ſuperiors, but " my vanity was ſoon ſeverely mortified. I " had exerted the whole force of my abilities " to invalidate *Nipon*'s claim, yet was it ru- " moured abroad that I was a Niponian."

" HEREUPON I threw myſelf into the arms " of the ſciences, and there found the moſt " ſolacing delight. I now thought myſelf in " poſſeſſion of a treaſure of which nothing " could deprive me. But here again I found " myſelf miſtaken; a treaty was entered into " with *Nipon*; a powerful party of the cour-

* The Chineſe Epicure.

" tiers who were ſecretly in the intereſt of " that kingdom, became my implacable ene- " mies, and ſought every occaſion to diſtreſs " and harraſs me, for having formerly main- " tained the rights of *Taiſing*."

" TIEN, ſaid I at laſt, ſpeaks not to men " by the mouths of mortals. His ſovereign " guidance is the herald which proclaims " his will; China I muſt quit, 'tis ſo his " fate decrees. And whither can I fly but " to the great exemplar of all earthly good- " neſs? LIEWANG concealed not from me " the eſteem he felt for the ſon of his " choice, whom he had entruſted with his ſole " and darling child."

USONG replied to this narration thus: " To ſeek the reward of virtue amongſt " mortals is a vain purſuit. The wiſe daily " urge the degeneracy of their ſpecies, and " when they find by experience, that the " picture they drew, reſembles the origi- " nal, ſhould they ſtill complain? I am " obliged to *Oel-fu* for thus ſeeking ſhelter " in my dominions and flying to USONG for " relief."

USONG conſulted the Chineſe ſage in private affairs. He ſubmitted ſtate ſecrets to his diſcuſſion, and as the Emperor over- looked the memorials drawn up by him, he

he ſoon found in *Oel-fu* an uſeful ſervant, though accuſed in China of different contradictory vices; but even from the Mandarin's misfortunes, USONG inferred his virtue. *Oel-fu* had always ſteadily adhered to his principles, and had alternately offended different ſects and parties, who ſought at the expence of the public good, to promote their own moſt ſelfiſh views. The great too frequently attach themſelves to thoſe, who are moſt ready to execute ſuch projects, as bid faireſt to advance their own emolument.

THE Emperor with unremitted ardour, perſevered to promote the welfare of Perſia. The ſages to whom he had committed the taſk of compiling the wiſe NUSHIRWAN's laws, had finiſhed their work. USONG himſelf reviſed thoſe laws, and ſtudied how to render them ſo plain and evident, that no one could miſtake their meaning. He took care that they ſhould all be ſimple concurring with each other, and alſo that each deciſion ſhould alike extend to many caſes. "The Legiſlator muſt have in mind all diſ-"tinct caſes; he ſhould ſo frame his laws as "that they may comprehend them all, and "thus one deciſion would include the reſt." USONG gave to all his laws a biaſs in favour

of

of the poor, the friendleſs, and the ſubject. "The Emperor's ſceptre is a ſword, ſaid he, "the great are ſkreened by power, the law "ſhould be a ſafeguard to the defenceleſs." He exempted none from an obedience to theſe laws; the Prieſts, the Military, the Emperor's Demeſnes, were all amenable to the ſame tribunal which adjudged the cauſe of the meaneſt peaſant. The determination of a proceſs was limited to a certain number of days, few charges and replications were admitted, ſhort delays were allowed, and the judges were prohibited from receiving preſents under pain of infamy and degradation. Two days in the week did the Emperor himſelf preſide in the high Courts of Judicature.

SOON after this, USONG publiſhed a Code of military laws, which related merely to the uſe of arms and military diſcipline. In affairs which concerned the public peace and ſafety, the ſoldiery were ſubject to the civil magiſtrate. The power of the military, eſpecially in the Eaſt, he ſaw, was too exceſſive, and ſhould a ſoldier be liable only to ſubmit to the ſentence of another ſoldier, the conſequence would be deplorable. Implicit obedience to command, abſtaining from acts of violence, and intrepidity in the greateſt dangers,

gers, were duties moſt forcibly inculcated. Deſerting from the ſtandard, or giving ground in a battle, before the general himſelf had recalled the banner of Perſia, was death without colour of mercy, and even after a retreat was ſounded, to ſtray from the banners was capitally puniſhed. USONG well knew that the freeſt ſtates amongſt the weſtern Empire had become invincible by the rigid ſtrictneſs of their military diſcipline; he alſo knew that what is puniſhed inſtantaneouſly, without mitigation, ſeldom enters into the minds of men to commit.

BY theſe regulations the Emperor brought matters ſo about, as that the appearance of the military, which in other countries is deemed the heavieſt curſe, was by the Perſians thought the greateſt bleſſings *. The pay alſo of the Perſian ſoldiers was ſuch as to afford the men a plentiful ſubſiſtence, and their pride kept them from meanneſſes, inſomuch that they ſcorned to pluck fruit without firſt obtaining the owner's leave. "Let the Ottomans, ſaid they, plunder and "oppreſs their fellow ſubjects, we are Perſia's protectors."

* Della Valle. Tom. iv. v.

NUSHIR-

NUSHIRWANI being now in her tenth year, USONG gave orders that ſhe ſhould be educated in the ſame manner as her young brothers, when they arrived at proper age. She was taught Hiſtory, Laws, Geography, natural hiſtory, public regulations productive of national utility, the means whereby the plenty of a ſtate is ſecured, the adminiſtration of juſtice, and in ſhort, in every thing that could contribute to form a princely mind ſhe was carefully inſtructed. NUSHIRWANI had all her father's fortitude, accompanied with her mother's gentleneſs. Her mind was acute, her quick diſcernment penetrated through every diſguiſe, and USONG with rapturous delight beheld, that whatever Throne fate might decree his daughter to occupy, ſhe would prove a bleſſing to her ſubjects.

THE Emperor undertook another journey, accompanied by his uſual retinue; he viſited the North-weſt provinces of Perſia. In every place he inſpected into the judicial proceedings, and ſeldom found cauſe to rectify any decree. He reviewed both the Regulars and Militia, and, the uſe of fire-arms excepted, he found them both expert in their exerciſe. He viſited the workhouſes of the Artiſts, and ſtrictly inquired concerning the Mines,

Mines, the Steel-works of Maſanderan, the turquoiſes of Firuzkuh, and the other ſources of Perſia's wealth. The increaſe of Mulberry-trees, and the improvement of Gardens and Meadows, gave him infinite pleaſure. He every where ſaw new houſes, found the towns cleared of the rubbiſh, and elegant edifices riſing out of the ruins, occaſioned by former cruel Sovereigns. What few inſtances of ſeverity he ſhewed were unavoidable, whereas marks of his goodneſs and liberality were every where to be met with.

In a lonely place, on the way to Maſanderan, he deſignedly ſtrayed from his retinue, to ride to a thatched cottage, which ſtood on an eminence at ſome diſtance from the road. The hill was divided by low walls into many terraſſes, all planted with ſhrubs and herbs adapted to the ſituation. The diſtant proſpect of this little hill excited the Emperor's curioſity; the whole was an imitation of Chineſe induſtry. A Sage, bending beneath the weight of years, was ſitting amidſt his numerous offſpring, and counſelling them whilſt they chearfully followed their daily occupations. "Father, ſaid Usong, how "many are the days of thy years?" "Sir, "replied the venerable parent, my years are numer-

" numerous; I have ſeen the tents of *Timur* " pitched in that plain, from whence thou " now haſt come." " What ſay'ſt thou to " the former times? What thinkeſt thou " of the preſent?" " The pliant reed is not " deſtroyed by bending, replied the antient " Cottager. I have ſeen *Timur*, like a lion " did he govern; he attacked thoſe only who " could reſiſt him, and always ſpared the " feeble. Other Princes ſucceeded, who ruled " like *Shakals**; even thoſe they ſlaughtered " who ſtruggled not; but, as a lifeleſs corpſe, " ſubmitted patiently to each injury. Now " methinks the elephant reigneth, who con- " tented lives on the fruits of the earth; he " delights not in ſpoils, yet is he illuſtrious. " *Timur*'s troops plundered us of our neceſ- " ſaries, and under his degenerate Succeſſors " our childrens innocence ſecured them not " againſt luſt and rapine, whereas now our " offspring, cattle, and the fruits of our in- " duſtry, all theſe we can ſafely call our " own. Let but USONG live, and this whole " hill will become a fertile garden, and this " hut a little village, peopled by the iſſue of " my body." The old man was a Mongale, who, having been carried priſoner into

* Beaſts of prey, which in the night dig up and devour dead bodies.

China,

China, had there learnt agriculture. This diſcourſe charmed USONG, who left the aged Cottager ſome tokens of his generoſity, but never did the Tartar know that he had converſed in his homely cot with Perſia's Sovereign.

USONG haſtened towards Maſanderan, in order to travel through that Province in the ſpring, when its fertilizing ſtreams and ſalubrious air give it the appearance of a terreſtrial Paradiſe. The flowers reared in other countries by the aid of art, the tulips which decorate the gardens of the Turkiſh Monarchs, the hyacinths, the pride of Weſtern parterres—all earth's choice embelliſhments were here ſpontaneouſly produced. The twining vines claſped the verdant trees in cloſe embraces, and, though unpruned, they bore the luſcious grapes that made the beſt of wines. Shady woods, in the thickeſt order ſet, here crown the verdant hills; and in this delicious province Nature wantons in her gay attire, and puts forth all her charms to make the ſeaſon look more gay.

USONG circuited about to avoid the deſart, which he grieved to ſee extending over ſo conſiderable a part of his Empire.* Though

* The Caſpian ſea beating on the ſhore of Perſia, renders this adjacent Country an unhealthy marſh. Hanway.

he

he took the route of Caſwin, yet was he obliged to paſs over a ridge of mountains before he could reach Eſtrerabad, where he erected ſome forts, and ſtationed a garriſon ſufficient to repel the invaſions of the rebellious Hircanians, and the neighbouring ſavage Turcomans. He praiſed the induſtry of the inhabitants of the flouriſhing Reſhd, who enjoyed more fruitful commerce, and acquired greater riches, than ſome whole Provinces. In Gilan he admired the laborioufneſs of the comely, well-form'd women, who, throughout this fertile Diſtrict, followed agriculture. Purſuing his journey along the Caſpian ſhore, he turned further weſtward; here he ſtrictly enjoined his Delegate to curb the licentious manners of the mountaineers near Knawer, where, from times immemorial, vices the moſt abominable had been daily practiſed; the inhabitants being loſt to all ſenſe of ſhame. The moſt criminal experienced the Emperor's abhorrence, and the reſt were threatened with a total extirpation, if they continued longer to diſhonour Perſia. He diſpatched thither a body of Chriſtian Georgians, to ſee the Civil Magiſtrates orders put in execution; then croſſing the famous river Araxis, he viſited Shirwan

and

and Shamachia, ſituated unfortunately too near the Leſgians.

At Baku he made a ſhort ſtay, and thought it not beneath his dignity to take a view of the marvellous works of nature in the Peninſula of Okeſra. He had a taſte for natural curioſities; he ſaw the many perpetual ſubterraneous fires; he traced the ſources of Naphtha, whoſe vapours take fire, and burns unextinguiſhably; he ſurveyed the roaring ſea conſtantly throwing up the Petrol, and the hill Jugtopa, from whoſe lofty ſummit iſſues an unctuous ſlime, which ſometimes ſpouts into the air like a fountain *.

The Emperor fixed the limits of this journey at the moſt antient city of Derbent: Here he gave audience to the Leſgian Deputies. Thoſe martial Mountaineers, incited merely by Usong's virtue, tendered him their ſubmiſſion; reſerving at the ſame time the enjoyment of their liberties, of which they had never been deprived. This City, the Northern Key of the Perſian Empire, he fortified, and put the caſtle in the beſt poſture of defence; here alſo he quartered a body of his Kurds.

* See Kæmpferi Amœnitat. Exotic.

The

THE Emperor returned again over almoſt impaſſible and ſky-towring mountains to Ardewil; ſituated amongſt flowery meads, celebrated for many antient monuments of the holy *Alids*, and for the richeſt ſheep-paſtures in all Perſia.

ON his return USONG found his faithful friend *Dſhuneid*, who, having loſt his venerable father, had juſt finiſhed his mourning. His ſon, the young *Haider*, he preſented to the Emperor; he was the perfect image of the beauteous *Emeta*.

BUT now did the clouds of fate begin to eclipſe our Hero's happineſs. Deſtiny, which led USONG from bondage to the Perſian Throne, dared now, after he had ſo well acquitted himſelf in proſperity, to try his fortitude by the touchſtone of adverſity. Scarce had he returned, when the Abyſſinian diſeaſe* began to rage at Shiras, with a fury unknown for many years. Thouſands of the moſt beauteous women, and multitudes of children, were carried off; at length the peſtiferous contagion reaching the Imperial Palace, ſeized *Dſhuneid* and *Ruſtan*, the Emperor's two ſons. LROSUA valued her own ſafety ſo little, that ſhe could not

* The Small-pox.

be

be kept from the couch of her expiring children: she constantly attended them till their last hour, by which means she drew in the poisonous vapours exhaled from their morbid bodies; and though she was not immediately infected, yet did her health visibly suffer, so that her delicate frame shewed every symptom of approaching dissolution.

USONG saw with consternation the hopes of Persia thus perishing from his arms; his only heir now was the noble-minded NUSHIRWANI: yet he mourned his loss far more as an Emperor, who has an affection for his people, than as a father, bereft of his darling offsprings. He began to be apprehensive lest all his labours should be lost, and the Empire again relapse into its former state of barbarism and wretchedness; he saw no remedy for so deplorable an evil, but the marriage of his daughter.

THE Persian sceptre being her portion, USONG was anxiously cautious to find out a Prince deserving of her, and capable of fostering hopes, that under his sway the people's happiness would be secured.

HE rejected all Sovereign Princes: "Persia, said he, so loyally attached to its "Emperor, shall never become a province "to another State, nor be exposed to the "rapa-

" rapacity of foreign Governors; who, not " being ſons of the Empire, would only " plunder and prey upon the State."

THE worthy Prince alſo excluded his own kindred the *Tſhengides:* The Nowians of his Court had often touched his generous patriotic heart with anguiſh. Theſe Mongalians had never learned to curb their headſtrong paſſions, nor could they be brought to ſubmit to the yoke of mild and equitable laws; their rough-hewn natures rendered them incapable of refined ſenſations, and deſtitute of theſe, a Prince can never be the father of his people.

THE hopes of USONG were centered in young *Haider*; a deſcendant of *Ali* and of *Iſhmael.* His religious principles were the ſame as thoſe profeſſed by the generality of the Perſians: The *Hoſſenides*, and all the Clergy, were ready to extol him to the people, as a choice gift beſtowed by bounteous Heaven. USONG hoped compleatly to model him for his exalted ſtation; his gentle manners, and engaging form, alſo bid fair for eſtabliſhing his NUSCHIRWANI's laſting happineſs.

THE Emperor firſt procured the young Princeſs to be acknowledged Heireſs of the Throne of Perſia. No Perſian could refuſe

to

to gratify the idol of their hearts in all his wiſhes; and the people knew their Monarch too well to harbour a doubt about his conduct, when iſſuing a public edict; he declared himſelf ſo ſatisfied with his daughter's virtue and abilities, as to propoſe her as his Succeſſor to the Throne. He alſo aſſured the people, that in the choice of a Conſort for his daughter, the welfare of the State ſhould be firſt conſulted. He next cauſed her name to be inſerted as ſole Heireſs to the Throne in all the public Regiſters, in the different Courts of Juſtice, and in the ſeveral departments of Law, Religion, Police, and the Finances.

He afterwards diſcloſed his mind to the yet dejected Liosua; whom, claſping with a warm embrace, he requeſted to prepare the young Princeſs for the intended marriage, and ſo to manage matters, that Nushirwani might, without expoſing herſelf to view, notice the majeſtic dignity of the youthful *Alid.*

An occaſion ſoon offered: A private tournament was celebrated in the interior Courts of the Imperial Palace, between the young Grandees, in honour, as was given out, of the Emperor's daughter being proclaimed Heireſs of the Empire.

NUSHIRWANI was in her thirteenth year, but in form, and mental endowments, ſhe far ſurpaſſed what might be expected from an age ſo tender; ſhe had the quickeſt ſenſibility, and the moſt feeling heart. The young *Alid* abounded in perfections, and was four years older than the Imperial Princeſs.

THE Empreſs obſerved the fitteſt time for making her daughter acquainted with the important change, her reſpectable father had reſolved on for her. "NUSHIRWANI, "ſaid the tender mother, is worthy to poſ- "ſeſs, and capable of ſwaying USONG's "awful ſceptre herſelf, but a deference "muſt be paid to popular prejudices: "USONG has ſelected a Prince, who will "eaſe my NUSHIRWANI of the cares of "government; and, in the happy choice "he has made, all that can gratify Perſia's "wiſhes, or the deſires of his beloved "daughter, are concentered."

NUSHIRWANI bluſhed, was ſilent for a moment, then throwing herſelf at the feet of her adored mother, ſhe kiſſed her hand, bedewing it with ſome tears, and intreated ſome further time to reflect on an affair, deciſive of her own fate, and the happineſs of ſo many thouſands.

LIOSUA

LIOSUA had too much penetration to look upon this requeſt for delay as the effect altogether of virgin modeſty; ſhe rather thought it proceeded from an objection harboured in the Princeſs's breaſt, againſt the propoſed alliance. She would not, however, refuſe her daughter the ſhort reſpite ſhe required; eſpecially as ſhe was now emerged out of her infant ſtate. "In eight days, ſaid the Em-"preſs, it is expected that my NUSHIR-"WANI will declare her mind; but con-"fident I am ſhe can have no inclination "repugnant to the will of a wiſe and tender "father, whom, as her Sovereign alſo, ſhe "muſt revere."

THE eight days elapſed too rapidly for the embarraſſed NUSHIRWANI: Again ſhe threw herſelf at her indulgent mother's feet. "My hand and life, ſaid ſhe, are both the "Emperor's; ſhould he require a ſacrifice "of both, with alacrity I obey." "And "why ſpeaks NUSHIRWANI of her life?" "Becauſe, replied ſhe, I wiſh not for its "continuance, if I am to give my hand to "*Haider.*"

THE Empreſs knew her daughter poſſeſſed an intrepid reſolution, ſomewhat reſembling her courageous father: Had the profeſſion of arms been conſiſtent with her ſex, ſhe

would have excelled the braveſt Generals. LIOSUA, therefore deſired to know the exception the Princeſs could make to the young *Haider*.

LONG did NUSHIRWANI ſuppreſs her ſecret diſlike; but at length, incapable of withſtanding her mother's tenderneſs, ſhe frankly owned—that ſhould ſhe marry, ſhe ſhould love her Conſort with an affection unlimited; but that ſhe alſo in return expected an undivided heart. She knew, ſhe ſaid, full well the privilege the Eaſtern Princes claimed as their undoubted right; but that, from her infancy, ſhe had been accuſtomed to ſee the Emperor doat on his beloved LIOSUA only, who alone deſerved the fulneſs of his affection: She had always obſerved, that the happineſs of the Empreſs depended on this ſweet endearing preference. That as for herſelf, ſhe ſhould be the moſt wretched Princeſs in the univerſe if another ſhared in this attachment; and her miſery would be proportionably increaſed, as her affection for her Conſort was ſincere and ardent.

SHE had heard one of her women ſpeak of the young *Alid*, long before he could flatter himſelf with gaining the hand of NUSHIRWANI; ſhe was appriſed that *Sulima*, a Circaſſian

caſſian of exquiſite beauty, whoſe mind was as lovely as her face divinely fair, reigned abſolute miſtreſs over young *Haider*'s heart. Unable to live without her, he had brought her with him even in his father's company "I, "continued the Imperial Princeſs weeping, I "propoſe to love my wedded Lord; without "this hope the bridal chaplet would gall me "more than fetters of the heavieſt iron. I "abhor the thought of being the loathed wife "of a diſguſted Conſort, whoſe heart is with "another whilſt he puts a force upon himſelf to teize me with careſſes; and I ſhould "be tempted to think my birth an extreme "hard fate, ſhould I, conſcious of my "rights, avenge myſelf, and thus become a "determined foe to him, whom I eſpouſed "as an inſtrument to promote my happineſs."

THE Empreſs, much embarraſſed by this reſolute language, diſmiſſed the Princeſs. "Care, ſaid ſhe with an emphatic air of "friendly earneſtneſs, care ſhall be taken "that NUSHIRWANI's obedience ſhall not "be prejudicial to her happineſs; but ſhe "muſt likewiſe recollect, that USONG's "views are far too exalted and important, "to yield to ſcruples pardonable in a female "of inferior rank, but highly unbe-

"coming in the Heireſs of the Perſian "Empire."

LIOSUA made the Emperor believe that NUSHIRWANI oppoſed her mother's counſels from baſhfulneſs only: In the interim ſhe diſpatched a female attendant, whom ſhe could confide in, for the beauteous *Sulima*. "The Empreſs requeſts to ſpeak "with the bright ornament of Arabia," ſaid the Meſſenger; and, without giving the alarmed Circaſſian time to reply, "*Sulima*, "continued ſhe, can have nothing to fear "from the well known goodneſs of our "Empreſs; but the interview is indiſpen-"ſibly neceſſary."

THE beautiful Slave heſitated not to obey the ſummons; ſhe proſtrated herſelf at the feet of the Empreſs. "Death, ſaid ſhe, "(the tears ſtreaming in her eyes) death is "my due: Shall *Sulima*, a purchaſed Slave, "diſpute a Prince's heart with the Heireſs "of Perſia?" For ſhe gueſſed the motive which induced the Empreſs to ſend for her.

"THE charming *Sulima*, ſaid the Empreſs "with a perſuaſive, irreſiſtable ſweetneſs, in "thus diſcloſing to me the ſecrets of her "heart, confers an obligation: But I de-"ſerve her confidence. Hear me, thou fair,

"be-

" beloved of *Haider*, hear me as thou wouldſt
" a fond, a tender mother.

" SULIMA never can expect that *Dſhuneid*
" will deprive his race of the Throne of
" *Cyrus*, merely that his ſon may totally
" devote himſelf to the youthful charms of a
" lovely beauty. The intended marriage
" will inevitably take place: The attractive
" graces of *Sulima* may, for a while, ſecure
" young *Haider*'s heart; but what then will
" be her fate? All Perſia will deteſt the
" magic ſweetneſs of her beauty, by which
" Perſia's heireſs, and USONG's daughter, is
" made unhappy. *Dſhuneid* will employ all
" his paternal authority, to tear a ſon from
" his faſcinating charmer's boſom; the
" whole world will be againſt *Sulima*; and
" nothing will befriend her, but a young
" man's wavering heart. Will this heart
" be proof againſt the cold indifference that
" ſucceeds enjoyment? Will it withſtand
" the united force of parental affection,
" of conjugal endearment, and of friendſhip
" moſt ſublime? When once ſo many
" potent Counſellors, backed by Perſia's
" wiſhes, have prevailed, what then will
" be the fate of *Sulima*, deprived of a Prince,
" whoſe endearing careſſes conſtitute her
" only happineſs?

"BUT *Sulima* happily poſſeſſes underſtanding, as well as beauty. She will reflect that a young man's love is but of ſhort duration; and that, when forſaken, her remaining years will be like ſome chearleſs deſart, without a ſingle ray of comfort. She, therefore, will ſacrifice to the welfare of the State a paſſion, which the mere volatile fickleneſs of youth may ſo eaſily extinguiſh; and Perſia has no honour, no favour in ſtore, which *Sulima* may not expect, if ſhe concurs to remove the impediments which now obſtruct the general happineſs of the Empire."

SULIMA liſtened with attention moſt profound; ſhe reflected awhile—then kiſſing with humility the garment of the Empreſs, "What am I, cried ſhe, that I ſhould balance my fate with that of Perſia? The auguſt LROSUA's will ſhall be to me a law."

THE Empreſs retained her in the Harem, and gave her alſo a conſiderable poſt at court. The diſtinguiſhed marks of royal favour with which this fair Circaſſian was honoured, added to her perſonal charms, ſoon induced a grandee of the court to ſue for her hand in marriage; ſhe was portioned as a friend of the Empreſs, and thus permanent

feli-

felicity rewarded her for the ſacrifice of a youthful paſſion.

HAIDER loved his *Sulima* with all the ardour of a youth and of an Arab, but he durſt not ſuffer any marks of extaſy to eſcape him in his father's preſence, who contemplated with extaſy the grandeur of the *Alids*, the propagation of the true faith, and the ſplendor of that throne deſcending to his offspring. *Haider*, without reluctance, preſented his hand to the fair NUSHIRWANI, nor did ſhe now make any objection to that conſort whom USONG's wiſdom had provided for her.

SHE ſtrove to conciliate the young Prince's affections, and ſoon by her perſonal charms, united with her mental accompliſhments of wit and knowledge, ſhe acquired an abſolute dominion over her conſort's heart.

USONG now prepared once more to viſit his Eaſtern provinces, and reached as far as Candahar, a place of vaſt importance. He made ſome ſtay at Yezd, famous for its female beauties, and being ſituated like a fruitful iſland in the midſt of ſandy waſtes. It is alſo celebrated on account of its precious oil of roſes, one of thoſe preſents in moſt eſteem amongſt the Eaſtern Princes; and the rich gold Brocades that are manufactured

there. USONG purchaſed large quantities of theſe coſtly goods, as he did in every place where inſtitutions of public utility ſtood in need of encouragement. He croſſed the ſolitary Segeſtan and reached the mountains of Candahar. Here the Afgan Princes waited on him, acknowledging him as their protector, but reſerved their independency entire.

THE Emperor received them with an affability natural to him, and diſpenſed ſeveral marks of his munificence amongſt theſe warlike barbarians. Nevertheleſs, he omitted not to ſecure Candahar, by environing it with a triple circuit of ſtrong ramparts, encloſing the whole ſpace between the mountains, and commanding the ſeveral paſſes leading through them to India. He alſo eſtabliſhed a perpetual camp compoſed of ſome thouſands of Georgian Cavalry near the fortreſs: his penetration foreſaw the danger which threatened the Empire from theſe ſavage mountaineers, ſhould the Perſian ſceptre ever unhappily fall into feebler hands.

HINDOSTAN was at this time in great confuſion, and it would have been an eaſy taſk for Perſia to have ſnatched ſome provinces from that diſtracted empire; but

USONG

USONG had too much generosity as well as wisdom. War he considered as the scourge of Heaven, and the theatre of unavoidable cruelties; nothing but necessity the most urgent, could, in USONG's opinion, justify a Prince for bringing such calamities upon mankind. He found, besides, that Persia was already too extensive, and the chain of hills towards the east formed a kind of natural barrier which blind ambition only could ever tempt a Persian Monarch to transgress.

THE fatal period now approached when USONG was to experience the greatest calamity that had ever yet befallen him. Ever since LIOSUA's first arrival in Persia, her health had been declining; the air even of Shiras she found too sharp and boisterous; difficult child-births, together with the loss of her father and her two sons, had also made the deepest impression on her delicate constitution; she felt an inward decay, and saw inevitable death approaching. Knowing the fond affection her consort bore her, the trouble her illness would occasion in his generous mind, she dreaded as the very worst of evils. She therefore concealed her pangs, and in his presence assumed a sprightliness so flattering to the Emperor, that tho'

he perceived his conſort's health declining daily, yet attributing her illneſs to accidental cauſes, he amuſed himſelf with the hopes of a recovery, which was, however, impoſſible ever to happen.

LIOSUA herſelf now urged the Emperor to viſit the important province of Khoraſſan, which being ſituated at the extremity of the North-eaſtern confines, was ſcarcely a year free from the hoſtile invaſions of the neighbouring turbulent Uſbecks. About this time NUSHIRWANI's delivery was expected, and LIOSUA, willing to conceal alſo from her daughter's eyes the dreadful ſpectacle of her own approaching diſſolution, ordered herſelf to be conveyed to Fagrabad, a country-ſeat where ſhe affected to entertain hopes of her recovery. The Princeſs, being too far advanced in her pregnancy to riſk the journey, remained at Shiras.

THE Emperor arrived at Khoraſſan; he ſurveyed with pleaſure the large and fertile province, but with concern he ſaw the wide extended ſandy plains. At Meſchet he viſited the Mauſoleum of *Iman Reza*, an illuſtrious deſcendant of *Ali*, and here he ſaw a large trading city capable of being made the ſtaple for the treaſures of Bokhara and India, and the products of the Perſian induſtry.

induſtry. He came to Niſabur, in the neighbourhood of which are the famous turquoiſe quarries, and Herat, celebrated for its tapeſtry and carpets. Several of the Uſbeck princes viſited him, he received them with every mark of friendſhip, but knew the fickle nature of thoſe people too well to place any confidence in their profeſſions. The Emperor ſtrongly fortified Marſhirhar, and erected ſeveral inacceſſible forts; he built alſo places of arms wherein a body of ſtanding forces were to be kept. But now on his return to Shiras he received the moſt melancholy tidings.

Liosua, certain of her approaching diſſolution, with a body all langour, had yet a mind all calmneſs and ſerenity; her apartments ſhe ordered to be decorated with ſweet-ſcenting flowers, and choſe her veſtments of the gayeſt colours. Each evening ſhe cauſed ſome of her women to ſing in her bed-chamber, and perform on ſeveral kinds of inſtrumental muſic in her preſence. Her view in this was to conceal from the whole Court the menacing ſtate of her declining health.

She employed one whole day in writing letters, which ſhe ſealed. The following night her feebleneſs was ſo much encreaſed as

to

to confine her wholly to her couch. She retained about her ſuch only of her attendants as were her particular confidants. "See, "ſaid ſhe to the beauteous *Sulima*, ſee "now the uſe of virtue! View with what "calm ſerenity I can quit a throne, and "part from a conſort far dearer to me than "thrones or diadems."

"'Tis thou, ſage LIEWANG, 'tis thou "that haſt taught me how to live and how "to quit this gaudy ſcene of things. Now, "venerable father, now I experience the "value of thy inſtructions. Receive, Oh "*Tien!* thy daughter on whom thou haſt "laviſhed thy bounties; protect my NUSHIR-"WANI, and reward that virtue thou thy-"ſelf haſt implanted in the noble USONG's "breaſt." She ſaid, and ſmiling cloſed her eyes in peace. USONG had been the firſt object of her love, USONG's image was the laſt which played about her heart.

To conceal this dire event was now impoſſible; a Courier therefore was diſpatched to the Emperor with the letter, which contained the laſt words of his incomparable LIOSUA.

"WHEN USONG ſhall break this ſeal "LIOSUA no longer will be an inhabitant "of earth. Greateſt of men! O bear in "mind

" mind the many, many bleſſings thou haſt " received from *Tien!* Repine not at my " death; this earth is but a theatre whereon " the ſovereign arbiter of fate ordains " that men ſhould exerciſe and diſplay thoſe " talents with which he has endowed them. " Never yet has USONG derogated from the " virtues *Tien* has beſtowed upon him. Still " therefore, darling of my ſoul, ſtill in this " ſevereſt of trials, be thou a bright example " to thy ſpecies. Submit with reſignation " to the decrees of a Providence wiſe and " unerring in all its diſpenſations; drop a " ſilent tear in token of affection for thy " LIOSUA, then be thyſelf again; ſtand " forth the comforter of thy people, and " ſeek their welfare with all the vigilant " alacrity of a Monarch, whoſe ſole delight " is in their happineſs: To wipe away the " tears that trickle down the cheeks of the " diſtreſſed, will, to a mind like thine, af- " ford a pleaſing conſolation."

USONG's heart, though armed againſt the ſtrokes of fate, was wounded by this unexpected ſhock; he withdrew into a tent, forbid all perſons entrance there, and paſſed a whole day and a tedious diſmal night in ſilent reflection on his unſpeakable loſs. With the tendereſt ſenſibility he felt the value,

value, the ineſtimable value of that prize which he had now for ever loſt, and his future life he viewed as a dreary waſte wherein he was to labour without reward, and gloomy evenings were to ſucceed each toilſome day. Every hour he would feel the loſs he had ſuſtained, in being bereft of his only friend, the co-partner of his heart, in whom alone he could confide, and who was rich in reſources to alleviate every anxious care.

DSHUNEID, who had accompanied the Emperor, could in his firſt days of mourning gain no admiſſion to his heart. USONG neither ſpoke nor wept, but indulged himſelf in all the luxury of grief by brooding over his melancholy fate. NUSHIRWANI, perhaps, might have been the only comforter to whom her father would have lent an ear, but ſhe was far diſtant, and her ſituation ſuch as rendered it neceſſary to conceal from her the ſad event.

BUT a loud and ſudden peal of thunder rouzed the torpid Perſian Emperor from his lethargic ſtate of ſullen ſadneſs. A Courier arrived from the Weſtern boundaries of the Empire with advices that *Machmud* *, after

* Mahomet II.

Morad's

Morad's quitting a ſecond time the throne, had ſtormed and took Byzantium; that *Conſtantine*'s laſt ſucceſſor had loſt his life in defence of the ſinking throne of Greece, and that all the Ottoman countries rung with triumphant ſhouts in praiſe of the young Roman Emperor, and with exulting hopes of acquiring an univerſal monarchy.

USONG was now obliged to ſhake off that ſorrow in which he had indulged himſelf, as the duty of an heart not entirely diveſted of the ſympathetic feelings of nature. He perceived the neceſſity of his reſuming the helm of government, as the tremendous ſtorm was hourly approaching. Inſtead therefore of returning to Shiras, where the remains of the moſt excellent amongſt women had been interred with ſolemn, ſilent pomp, he repaired to Tabris, and again traverſed the Weſtern frontiers of the Empire. He augmented the Georgian troops, and made up the number of armed Kurdes, ſtationed on the borders of the empire, fifty thouſand *. The heavy Artillery was brought to Wan and Irwan, and the annual Militia, conſiſting already of ſixty thouſand, he increaſed to double

* That was their number before Shach-Abbas.

that

that number. Twice the uſual number of days were ſet apart for exerciſing the troops throughout the whole empire, the Armourers alſo worked night and day. USONG ſent deputies to Alkahirah to rouze the ſlumbering Circaſſian Princes, and animate them to prepare againſt the common danger which threatened the world in general, and Egypt in particular. Four Couriers were diſpatched to Venice with meſſages of the like import. The Emperor found a new, though feeble ally in *David*, the Emperor of Trebizond.

AT length the Princeſs, who was making daily enquiries about her mother's health, was informed of her demiſe. She ſhewed leſs fortitude than was expected; ſentimental hearts are leſs afflicted by their own misfortunes, than by the ſufferings of thoſe they love. It was long before NUSHIRWANI could recover her ſpirits; *Haider* was abſent, her honoured father was ſurrounded with cares and dangers, and the black tempeſt which gathered in the Weſt ſeemed hourly to be haſtening nearer

SOON as ſhe had ſomewhat compoſed herſelf, ſhe intreated the Emperor's permiſſion to follow him to Tabris. She fell at her diſconſolate father's feet, and thus addreſſed him; "My gracious Liege, deign to accept

"the

"the ſervices of thy daughter, and thus "permit her to repair in part, that loſs "which none can wholly compenſate." The Emperor cheriſhed the Princeſs as a father, and loved her for her diſtinguiſhed virtues. He made it his cuſtom to ſpend each other evening with her, and NUSHIRWANI collected from different countries, accounts and curious rarities to amuſe the Emperor amidſt his toilſome cares. The Court continued long at Tabris.

THE conqueſt of the remaining Grecian provinces in Europe, and ſeveral ſevere campaigns along the Danube, afforded employment for the fiery *Machmud* ſome years longer. Perſia in the interim enjoyed a repoſe, the tranquility of which was, however, greatly interrupted by the certain apprehenſions of approaching war.

THE young Perſian Heireſs heard much of the perſonal charms and mental excellencies of the Princeſs *Martha*, commonly called *Deſpoina*, daughter to the Emperor of Trebizond. Her temper was full of ſweetneſs and affability, her form gracefully elegant, and her features had all the charms of Grecian beauty * to recommend them.

* Theſe people have ever been, and ſtill are, famous for the beauty of their features.

The

The impending misfortunes of her family had taught her that humility very rarely to be met with amongſt Princeſſes. NUSHIRWANI ſingled out this Princeſs as every way worthy her friendſhip, and thought by reſcuing her from the miſeries to which her family was now expoſed, to give a different turn to the Emperor's gloomy thoughts. NUSHIRWANI's great ſoul alſo had in contemplation the farther ſecurity of the Perſian ſucceſſion; with this view ſhe undertook to bring about a marriage between the Emperor and the Trebizontine Princeſs.

IN daily converſations with her father, NUSHIRWANI expreſſed her ardent wiſhes that the weighty cares of ſtate could be mitigated by that pleaſure, a tender conjugal affection only can procure to ſentimental minds. By degrees ſhe prevailed upon the Emperor, and a propoſal was formally made to *David* by an Ambaſſador. Notwithſtanding the almoſt total reduction of Trebizond, *David* ſtill kept in view the glory of *Conſtantine*, and the firſt condition he inſiſted on in the marriage treaty was, that the Princeſs ſhould be allowed the free exerciſe of the Chriſtian worſhip. USONG was far from being bigotted; he found beſides in Chriſtianity, the eſſential articles of all Religions,

gions, the veneration of one only God, the acknowledgment of a Providence, and a future ſtate of retribution every way agreeable to the moral attributes of the Deity.

THE truly amiable *Deſpoina*, being conducted to the Emperor, the marriage was ſolemnized by the Armenian Patriarch of Ekmiaſin, in NUSHIRWANI'S apartment. USONG found in her a meek and virtuous conſort, but the education ſhe had received ſerved to contract her mind; ſhe was ſtrongly attached to the trifling ceremonies which form only the drapery of true Religion, and was deficient in the knowledge requiſite to ſupport an entertaining converſation with the all-diſcerning USONG. NUSHIRWANI continued her friend, and ſupplied what of polite agreeableneſs was wanting in the new Empreſſes converſation. *Martha* brought with her to the Perſian court her ſiſter *Eudoxia*, yet in the bloom of innocence and infancy.

WHILST the war with the Ottomans was as yet in ſuſpence, NUSHIRWANI was delivered of a ſon, and this event contributed greatly to ſooth the Emperor's ſorrows. He named this Prince ISHMAEL, after the chief of the *Koreitſhides*, and of the race of *Machmud* and *Ali*. He now ſaw the ſucceſ-

ſion

ſion firmly eſtabliſhed, and with joy unſpeakable, rejoiced to perceive ſo many evils thereby averted. A ſingle life in ſuch a caſe, may preſerve millions from ſlaughter, and ſave an empire from impending ruin.

AN unlucky accident now haſtened the rupture with the Ottomans. *Machmud* had made war upon the Sultans of Caramania, he had defeated them and reduced their country. One of them, *Pir Hamet*, having eſcaped, fled to the generous USONG for protection.

MACHMUD, accuſtomed to ſee all things bow before him, diſpatched an Officer to demand the unfortunate Prince. The audacious Ottoman even uttered ſome threating menaces.

THE victorious USONG felt himſelf hurt by this indignity: "The Turcoman, ſaid "he to his Courtiers, continues ſtill as much "a clown, as he was in *Timur*'s days."* It piqued his pride ſeverely, that a Prince, whoſe anceſtors two centuries before had ſubſiſted in the fields of Turkeſtan by huſbandry, and had uſurped a throne by perjury and treachery, ſhould now preſume contemptuouſly to bid defiance to the De-

* Timur had ſpoken in the ſame manner of Bajazet.

ſcendant

ſcendant of *Tſhengis*, whoſe anceſtry was loſt in the dark obſcurity of the primeval ages of the world. But USONG was wiſe, and ſincerely loved his people. He diſpatched an Embaſſy to *Machmud*, ſetting forth that the port of the Perſian Empire was the aſylum of the world; that, conſiſtent with his honour, he could not deliver up to certain death one, who had thought ſo favourably of his virtue, as to ſolicit his protection; that it was his wiſh to live in peace and friendſhip with the Sultan of the Ottomans: he therefore beſought *Machmud* to ſpare Caramania and Trebizond. Coſtly preſents accompanied this requeſt.

THE anſwer of *Machmud*, inflated with ſucceſs, breathed an air of inſult: "He "could not, he ſaid, regard him as a friend, "who harboured his avowed enemies." He reproached the Emperor in the bittereſt terms for his alliance with the infidels, whom USONG ſhould rather aſſiſt the Sultan to extirpate. He continued his ravages in Caramania, and ſeized upon the wealthy *Tocat*; nor did the Ottoman troops ſpare the neighbouring Kurdes, nor that part of Armenia ſubject to Perſia. The Baſhaw of Amaſia invaded alſo the dominions of the Emperor of Trebizond.

IN

In the interim a ſplendid Embaſſy arrived from Venice, to conclude a firm alliance with the Emperor; and, in the name of the Republic, the Ambaſſador engaged that the Venetian fleet ſhould ſcour the coaſt of Caramania, and, by attacking the ſea-port towns, oblige the Sultan to divide his troops; and that Perſia ſhould alſo be ſupplied with ſuch military ſtores as ſhe could not fabricate.

The fickle, puſillanimous Court of Egypt, could be prevailed upon by no remonſtrances to provide in time againſt the common danger. The Nazarene Princes alſo, according to cuſtom, continued to neglect their moſt important concerns, and to ſacrifice the general welfare and ſafety of all Europe, for the attainment of ſome inconſiderable advantages.

The difficulties and dangers of this war were eaſily foreſeen by Usong: *Machmud* had already ſent into Caramania a ſelect detachment of Veteran troops, commanded by his ſon *Bajazet*, accompanied by an old General of approved experience. The Sultan himſelf followed, with all the troops who had fought in Europe, and who conſtituted the flower of his army. The Boſnians inhabiting the mountains between Hungary and Greece,

Greece, the Epirots and Macedonians, were, from the nature of their countries and climates, more hardy than the Aſiatics. *Machmud* had alſo a numerous body of Janiſſaries, long accuſtomed to the uſe of fire-arms, together with a large train of artillery. The Sultan's troops, having for many years been ſtrangers to peace, dangers and fatigues were become habitual to them; they were elated by repeated victories; and, having always conquered, they believed themſelves invincible. *Machmud* alſo, though by nature cruel, was yet a ſkilful and moſt conſummate General; his mind was better cultivated, and more enriched with ſcience, than his weſtern foes, who hated him, would allow. His ambition and inordinate paſſion for war were indeed to be ranked amongſt his faults, but they were ſuch as led to glory and to victory.

In oppoſition to the Sultan's troops, Usong had his Kurdes, which formed a body of well-trained, hardy cavalry; his Georgians, though few in number, were the beſt horſemen in all Aſia. The Perſian Militia had ſeldom faced an enemy; from them, therefore, Usong could not expect the firmneſs of veteran troops. The greateſt diſparity was in the weapons. On horſeback

and ſabre in hand, USONG might ſafely preſume upon the advantage, each Perſian deeming himſelf ſuperior to two Ottomans. But Perſia was ſo deſtitute of infantry, that the Emperor could ſee no proſpect of being able to reſiſt the hardy phalanx of the Janiſſaries, far leſs could he expect to equal the fire of thoſe haughty Conquerors; and as to the artillery, the Perſians, both in number and skill, were far inferior to the Ottomans.

THE wiſe USONG's whole reſource was in himſelf. By the prudent management of his forces, and the unbounded affection of his people, he hoped to obſtruct the marches of the Ottomans, and ſo to intercept their ſupplies, that, in a country far diſtant from their capital, they might be deprived of ſubſiſtence; and thus rendered incapable of carrying on the war for any length of time, under the various hardſhips he was preparing for them. He alſo knew the fury of the Ottomans at the firſt attack, and how eaſily they yielded to a perſiſting foe.

THE firſt campaign was carried on by the light horſe; the command of which the Emperor had given to the fiery *Pir Hamet*. They were ſoon joined by a large body of Caramanians, who repaired to execute the orders of their Prince with ſhouts of joy, as

if

if already exulting in victory. USONG had warned, and even commanded *Pir Hamet*, not to riſque a battle with the Ottomans. For ſome time he was ſucceſsful; the whole country was up in arms againſt the enemy; and not a hand was found which did not wield a weapon in defence of its lawful Sovereign. Thus did *Pir Hamet* ſoon collect together a numerous army, and he defeated ſeveral detachments of the Ottomans. The old and experienced *Achmet* poſted himſelf advantageouſly near Tocat; he encamped on a gentle aſcent, which commanded a view of the country; his formidable cannon was ſo planted, as to defend his poſt; beneath were ſloping vineyards, interſected by narrow avenues, the ſeveral paſſes of which he guarded by a body of Janiſſaries. The extenſive City of Tocat being in his rear, ſecured him a retreat.

PIR HAMET was ſo infatuated, ſo blinded by youthful confidence, that he imagined the Ottomans, even thus ſtrongly poſted, could not reſiſt him. He furiouſly attacked the vineyards with his cavalry, and now the mortiferous lead, like hail, came pouring down from the eminence and different batteries. The braveſt fell, the ſurviving Caramanians fled, and in their retreat ſuffered

moſt ſeverely from the thundering cannon. This defeat abated the precipitate courage of *Pir Hamet*'s inexperienced ſubjects. They diſperſed, and their Prince, compelled to abandon his camp and hereditary dominions, fled with the ſmall remains of his ſhattered army, to ſeek ſhelter at Tabris; where, aſhamed of a defeat occaſioned by acting in oppoſition to the Emperor's advice, he cautiouſly avoided ever appearing in his preſence.

THOUGH USONG prudently ſhunned danger, yet was he undiſmayed when it ſurrounded him. He ſent for *Pir Hamet* to Court, and endeavoured to inſtil new courage into his dejected mind. "My friend, "ſaid the Emperor, has now fatally expe- "rienced that the defence even of a juſt cauſe "may prove a difficult taſk; but I hope he will, "on ſome future occaſion, find, that patient "perſeverance conquers all obſtacles, and "obtains the wiſhed-for end."

USONG entered Caramania; *Bajazet*, and the aged *Achmet*, had in triumph joined the Sultan, and *Machmud*, with a glow of paternal fire, exulted in the thought that the Ottoman glory would not be tarniſhed by his illuſtrious ſon. Another General, of the name

name of *Morad* *, a Chriſtian Renegade of the Imperial line of the *Paleologues*, headed the Ottomans. Youth and ambition had ſeduced the former Byzantine Prince, and from an ambition of the degenerate kind, this man had ſo far bebaſed himſelf, as to ſerve under the deſtroyer of his Imperial race.

THE Perſian Emperor purſued the plan he at firſt concerted. He divided his army, which conſiſted entirely in cavalry, into ſeveral bodies; every night he gave inſtructions to the commanding Officers of each Body, whither to make excurſions, and where to join the other detachments. The Perſians were every where, yet could the Ottomans no where find them. They cut to pieces all who ſtrayed at any diſtance from the head quarters. If the Seraſquier attempted to bring to the camp proviſions, or warlike ſtores, three Perſian detachments uniting, attacked the Convoy, deſtroyed the Ottomans, and ſeized upon the ſupplies. If *Morad* made an effort to attack them, they inſtantly diſperſed, and the ſwift agility of their horſes ſoon conveyed them out of the Ottomans ſight. Every Caramanian was a ſpy: The

* See Bizarro.

Perſians knew each ſecret motion, each manouvre of the enemy, whilſt *Morad* was kept in hourly ſuſpence, and uncertain dread.

By ſuch a conduct did Usong thus daily harraſs the Ottomans; and *Morad*, foreſeeing that death awaited him equally at Byzantium as in the plains of Tocat, reſolved in deſperation to engage the Emperor, whereever he ſhould find him.

Usong was inſtantly apprized of this raſh, perplexed determination of the Seraſquier. "Now, ſaid he to *Pir Hamet*, now is the "time for battle." He aſſembled all the ſeparate diviſions of his army, in a plain behind his head quarters: The Emperor's retreat added preſumption to the apoſtate General, he preſſed with haſty ardour upon the retiring Perſians.

As ſoon as the Ottoman army was arrived within two farſangs* of Usong's rear, he iſſued ſudden orders to march againſt them, without noiſe or ſound of warlike inſtrument. Having the advantage of numbers on his ſide, he divided his forces into three diviſions; the two wings flanked the Ottomans, whilſt Usong attacked the Seraſquier in the front. He ordered his troops to form their ranks

* A farſang is about four Engliſh miles.

out

out of the reach of the enemy's fire-arms; and then, with full ſpeed, and ſword in hand, to attack the enemy on every ſide. The Ottomans ſaw death before them, and deſtruction ſurrounding them from every quarter. "The hand of Fate's againſt us*," cried they in fits of deſparation, and found themſelves deprived of all their vigour. They were routed in a moment, many thouſands were cut to pieces, and the remainder, very few excepted, were taken priſoners. Death ſeemed to *Morad* leſs terrible than the furious aſpect of his incenſed maſter; he ſought and found it in the field of battle.† This ſignal victory was gained on the ſide of the Perſians with ſo little loſs, that USONG could ſafely ſay his triumph did not coſt one ſingle tear.

AFTER almoſt all Caramania had thrown itſelf into his arms; after the Ottoman Garriſons were driven out of moſt of the towns, USONG made a triumphal entry into Tabris. He judged it expedient, for reaſons approved by his ſagacity, to exhibit here a piece of ſplendid pomp, by no means ſuitable to his own diſpoſition; but he thought on this oc-

* This is the cuſtom of the Turks, in dangers for which they think there's no help.

† Bizarro gives an account of this battle.

caſion it would elevate and revive the ſpirits of his warlike Perſians. He ordered the priſoners, in their military accoutrements, to be conducted to the ſpacious ſquare at Tabris. They marched in cloſe ranks under arms, between two files of Perſian cavalry in armour. The heavy artillery, the enſigns, the horſes tails, the commanders truncheons, and all thoſe other trophies of military pomp, followed the priſoners. In the center of the ſquare ſat USONG, elevated on a lofty ſofa, the Perſian banner waving over his canopy. The Generals, the Mongalian Princes, the Grandees of Perſia, richly dreſſed in habits moſt ſuperb, encircled his throne. The young *Iſhmael* himſelf, in ſplendid armour, ſtood near his illuſtrious Anceſtor. All the priſoners having laid down their arms as they paſſed before the Emperor, were led away to be diſtributed throughout all the provinces, that every Perſian might have living teſtimonies of the glorious victory before his eyes. Then preſented themſelves before the throne thoſe Warriors whoſe diſtinguiſhed bravery the Emperor himſelf had noticed, or who had been properly recommended to him as having been greatly inſtrumental in obtaining the late ſignal victory. Theſe were honoured with coſtly preſents; the choiceſt

ſteeds,

ſteeds ſuperbly capariſoned; ſabres ſet with precious gems; banners perpetuating their fame to poſterity; curious helmets richly plumed and decorated; armour of well-tried ſteel; wreaths of laurel dextrouſly twined, and glittering with gems of the fineſt luſtre.

THE wide-extended Tabris rung with triumphant ſhouts, that vibrated for hours through the air: "Long live the ſecond "*Cyrus*, the Sovereign of the Univerſe, the "illuſtrious image of the Deity!"

FAME ſpread the renown of USONG to the remoteſt regions; the Mongalians, though ſeperated from Perſia by ſuch a ridge of mountains, and deſarts ſo immenſe, yet even they exulted at the ſucceſs of a ſon of *Tſhengis*. *Hindoſtan* ſent Ambaſſadors to him, and the weſtern people rejoiced in the hopes of having found an hero, able to reſtrain, within due limits, the inordinate ambition of the Ottomans.

THE next campaign was leſs bloody, but not without its victories. USONG reduced the remaining part of Caramania, and in ſlight ſkirmiſhes ſlew ſeveral thouſands of the Ottomans. The General had ſtrict orders from the Sultan not to riſk an engage-

ment*; he, therefore, poſted himſelf ſo advantageouſly amongſt the mountains, in which that country abounds, that USONG found the impracticability of attacking the enemy, with an army conſiſting of cavalry only.

BUT now the peſtiferous thunder-ſtorm, which had been ſlowly rolling from the weſt, reached at length the Perſian frontiers. *Machmud*, breathing out vengeance and deſtruction, led in perſon the main body of his army into Caramania, and an immenſe train of artillery followed. The choiceſt of the Ottoman troops, the Janiſſaries, and the Europeans, advanced in formidable multitudes; the Crimean and Nogayan Tartars, hovering about the wings, covered the flanks of their prodigious camp. All that was valiant amongſt the Turks, all *Morad*'s veteran experienced Generals, quitted their ſolitary retreats, and flocked to the banners of their martial Sultan.

USONG had collected the whole ſtrength of Perſia, except a ſmall force ſtill left at Tabris, for the defence of that city, and the

* According to Bizarro's account Machmud himſelf headed the Turks in this campaign; but it is ſcarcely credible that this ſpirited Victor would have avoided his enemy.

Impe-

Imperial family. But what moſt perplexed the Emperor, was the tardineſs of the Venetian ſupplies. The Republic had indeed ſent a fleet to ſcour the Cilician coaſt, where ſeveral deſcents were made, and ſome ſea-ports taken. The Commanders orders likewiſe were to obey, in every particular, the Emperor's direction. The Envoy brought preſents of immenſe value, gold and ſilver vaſes, the workmanſhip of which far exceeded the metal itſelf in worth*. One hundred Engineers accompanied the train of Artillery, under their Commander *Thomas de Imola*; they eſcorted ammunition, and ſtores of implements proper for beſieging ſtrong towns and citadels: Many gunſmiths, and other artiſts, which Perſia ſtood in need of, came alſo with them. But through the dilatorineſs of the Venetian General, their important ſupplies arrived not till after the bloody battle, which was at once to decide the fate of Aſia.

Usong marched againſt the incenſed *Machmud*. The exaſperated Sultan ſpread fire and devaſtation all around him. "Before his army, ſaid the Ottomans themſelves, the country was a paradiſe; behind

* According to the hiſtory they were made at Paris.

"it, a burning waſte." He continued advancing until within ten days journey of Tabris, and threatened that large and flouriſhing City, in which USONG had every neceſſary for the ſupport of a numerous army.

FAIN would the ſagacious Emperor have declined a battle, his intention being to weary out the Ottomans by ſkirmiſhes, and interrupt their ſupplies. But the greateſt men are ever the eaſieſt perſuaded. USONG yielded at length to the counſels of the fervid *Haider*, *Pir Hamet*, the intrepid Nowians, and the Perſian grandees. They all unanimouſly repreſented to the Emperor, that the loſs of Tabris would be followed by the ruin of the Empire, that many thouſands of loyal ſubjects would be cruelly maſſacred, and that the means of proſecuting the war would thus be loſt for ever. The zealots of the *Alid* race were inflamed only at the thoughts, that the ſacred Sepulchres at Ardevil might be profaned by the Sonnites. "The cavalry "alone, they ſaid, could never ſecure the "paſſes; nor could any poſts be maintained "wherein the Janiſſaries would not pene-"trate." They reminded the Emperor of his repeated victories, and conjured him not to queſtion the valour of his Perſians, who

to

to a man would ſhed the laſt drop of their loyal blood, ſooner than that USONG's martial honour ſhould be tarniſhed.

THE Emperor complied, and marched againſt the foe, whom he met in the environs of Arzendgan, in a ſpacious plain near the Euphrates, where all the Perſian cavalry could ſpread itſelf.

MACHMUD ſtood in the center of a ſquare phalanx of fifty thouſand Janiſſaries, ſurrounded by his heavy artillery, the diſcharges from which conveyed death and deſtruction to the thouſands around. They marched in fifty ranks, as one dreadful impenetrable colonade of fire, on the wings were the Spahis* and the Tartars, commanded by their Khan.

USONG with his Kurdes, and the choiceſt of his Perſians, faced the Janiſſaries; the remaining part of his cavalry he ſtationed on the wings. He iſſued out the ſame orders as he had given in the victorious battle againſt the Baſhaw *Morad*. Slowly he advanced till he came within reach of the enemy's deſtructive fire. Here he halted, and raiſing his eyes with fervour towards heaven, he implored its aid; then gave the word, "*Perſia*'s "*welfare*:" And after ordering the Imperial

* The Turkiſh Horſe-guarde.

ban-

banner never to quit his ſide, he ruſhed through the clouds of ſmoke, he braved the ſlaughtering cannon, and attacked the foe.

THE Turkiſh and Tartar cavalry inſtantly gave way: The conquering Perſians, in obedient to the Emperor's orders, flanked the Ottomans, after leaving a ſufficient body drawn up in order of battle, to prevent the ſcattered wings of the enemy from rallying.

THE Perſians had with their ſabres routed ſome ranks of Janiſſaries; but theſe experienced ſoldiers turned the fire of their arms on every ſide, and every inſtant fell the braveſt of their foes. USONG diſcerned the Sultan on horſeback in the thickeſt of the battle; his mantle furred with ſable, and the three hern-plumes on his turban, diſtinguiſhed him from the reſt. Seven horſes tails with golden decorations, hung waving by his ſide. The Perſian Emperor ſaw not the ſmalleſt proſpect of victory but by the Sultan's death. With impetuous courage, intermingled with deſpair, he preſſed towards him, but the deſtructive cannon ſlaughtered all around him. The flower of the Perſian army fell; moſt of the Princes of the line of *Tſhengis*, and *Pir Hamet* himſelf, the cauſe of all this carnage, were ſlain by the Emperor's ſide. *Dſhuneid*, the Emperor's friend,

loſt

loſt his life in fighting for him*. At length a murderous ball pierced the noble *Haider*'s generous heart cloſe by the horſe on which the Emperor was mounted. USONG ſaw him fall, changed countenance, and ſought his own extinction.

IN an inſtant he muſt have periſhed—*Sherin* bore the imperial banner. The faithful attendant ſeized hold of the Emperor's bridle and turned about his horſe; "Pardon "thy oldeſt ſervant, ſaid he, Perſia may "recover after a defeat, but never after "USONG's death." Without waiting for the Emperor's reply, he ordered the drums to ſound the ſignal of retreat, which proved almoſt as dangerous as the attack. Many heroes periſhed by the unceaſing fire of the Turkiſh Artillery, yet did the Perſian ſabre

* The Weſtern hiſtorians make this Dſhuneid Uſong's Son. Marco Guazzo aſcribes to this Dſhuneid, whom he calls Dſhenial, the chief command in the battle, and imputes the loſs of it to his raſh ardour. "Uſong, ſays "he, had forbidden him riſquing a battle, but the "young Prince having defeated two Baſhaws, had "engaged contrary to his father's orders, and being "ſurrounded by Machmud, he and the whole army "were cut off." But Bizarro's account is more credible, it being very improbable that the experienced Uſong ſhould, on ſo momentous an occaſion, truſt the command of the Perſian army to a young and unexperienced commander.

cut

cut itſelf a paſſage through the cloſeſt files of the Janiſſaries, and the Emperor was carried off in ſafety.

SHERIN threw himſelf at his feet, confeſſing that he deſerved death for having dared to order a retreat, and in a manner do violence to the Emperor; but the grateful USONG overlooked ſuch ceremonious formalities; he knew the rectitude of his zealous ſervant's intention, and with a fond embrace he thanked him for poſſeſſing himſelf at a time when *Haider*'s death had totally deprived the Emperor of all recollection.

THE Sultan ventured not a purſuit, his infantry was expoſed, and had a breach been made in his cloſe phalanx, a defeat would have been unavoidable. Part of the Perſian army he ſaw poſted on each ſide of him in regular files; he repaired his ſhattered ranks and after a general diſcharge of cannon in token of victory, his army remained in order of battle. The loſs of the Ottomans * far exceeded that of the Perſians; but to have driven the illuſtrious USONG from the field of battle, *Machmud* thought ſufficient to immortalize his name.

* Forty thouſand Turks to eight thouſand Perſians. Bizarro.

THE

THE Perſians according to the Emperor's pre-concerted plan, retired to a ſpot where they found plenty of water and proviſions. 'Twas with many a heavy ſigh he left ſo many friends, ſo many firm ſupporters of his empire, without the rites of ſepulture: "And "who, ſaid he diſconſolate, who now will "comfort my deareſt NUSHIRWANI?" for he knew not yet the magnanimity of her generous ſoul.

HE diſtributed his forces on the two wings of the Ottoman army, and renewed his former orders to cut off their ſupplies, and keep a watchful eye upon their foraging parties; for the field of battle was a dry and barren heath *.

IN three days time the Meſſenger diſpatched by *Sherin* with the diſmal news, arrived at Tabris. This ſuperb city heaved like the Ocean in ſome dreadful ſtorm, in terror of the future, and grief for the paſt. NUSHIRWANI heard the alarming tidings without once dropping a ſingle tear. "This, "ſaid ſhe, is no time for weeping;" and repairing to the ſpacious *Meidan* † mounted on an elephant and equipped for war, ſhe

* Bizarro calls it a Common or Gooſe-field.

† A great Square in Tabris.

ordered

ordered the principal officers of the troops lying at Tabris, with the chief inhabitants of that populous city, to be convened together by the ſound of the great drums. "Perſia's ſafety, ſaid an Herald in her name, "depends upon the uſe we make of the "preſent moment. Within an hour let the "troops repair to join the Emperor, e'er "to-morrow's dawn his foes may cruſh him. "He who amongſt the innabitants of Tabris "loves his country and his family will fol-"low me; for without a re-inforcement to "oppoſe the progreſs of the enemy, Tabris "will in a few days become a flaming pile "of ruins, conſuming the bodies of its citi-"zens to aſhes."

ALL Tabris flew inſtantly to arms; ten thouſand warlike men, the choiceſt of its many thouſands, joined the regulars and marched without delay towards Arzendgan. The aged Perſians, who had fought and bled for their country's liberty, ſeized each a lance and headed the new ſoldiery. Swift Couriers flew to apprize the Emperor of the approaching re-inforcement; other Meſſengers on horſeback were employed in levying the Perſian Militia. NUSHIRWANI, amidſt her warriors, haſtened to her father's relief. "Did not *Ajeſhah*, mounted on a "Camel,

" Camel, ſaid ſhe, inſpire freſh valour into " her fighting troops, in a cauſe far leſs ho- " nourable than this *.

PREVIOUS to her departure, ſhe provided for the ſafety of the dejected Empreſs and had her eſcorted to the Caſtle of Karpurt †, a place from its ſituation impregnable and effectually ſecured againſt any ſudden attack.

MACHMUD advanced ſlowly, and with doubtful apprehenſions. His Cavalry was totally deſtroyed, and one half of his Janiſſaries had been cut to pieces by the ſabres of the deſperate Perſians; he was alſo fearful of wanting water and proviſions, and beheld at a ſmall diſtance the Perſian troops watching his every motion.

IN a few days the new army joined the Emperor, and each hour freſh re-inforcements arrived in conſequence of the Meſſengers diſpatched by NUSHIRWANI to invite them. All Perſia was in motion; one will inſpired this magnanimous people. To ſave their Emperor and retrieve their contry's honour, was the ſole wiſh that inflamed each Perſian's mind, and quite extinguiſhed in his breaſt the love of life.

* In the Battle of the Camel, where the Syrians were routed by Ali.

† Bizarro.

NUSHIR-

NUSHIRWANI haſtened with impetuous ſpeed to her illuſtrious father, ſhe requeſted inſtant admiſſion to his preſence; "All, ſaid "ſhe is ſafe, ſince USONG lives," and then threw herſelf at his feet. In her countenance the Emperor ſaw no traces of the female, not the ſmalleſt appearance of fear was viſible; ſhe breathed only the ſublimeſt ſentiments, and her ardent zeal to ſave the Empire glowed in her countenance and ſparkled in her eyes. USONG embraced her with the greateſt tenderneſs; "Poſſeſſed of ſuch a "daughter, who would wiſh for ſons?" he ſaid, and fetched a heartfelt ſigh.

MACHMUD now deſpaired of reducing Tabris. He on the contrary was apprehenſive of being ſurrounded, and of ſeeing his haraſſed troops expoſed to a defeat; he ſlowly and with great precaution retreated. Not a ſingle Perſian houſe was fired by the torches of the victorious army. But ſuch was *Machmud*'s cruelty, that the wounded and Perſian priſoners were maſſacred; and to ſhew that his vengeance was not of the vulgar ſtamp, he ordered one hundred of thoſe wretched victims to be daily butchered *. He then retired into Caramania, he laid

* Bizarro.

waſte

waſte what had hitherto eſcaped his fury, and led from thence his army againſt the defenceleſs *Trebizond*.

DAVID, incapable of oppoſing the victor, ſurrendered to *Machmud* on condition that his life ſhould be ſpared. But the blood-thirſty Sultan, a ſtranger to honour and the ſacredneſs of a promiſe, cauſed the whole imperial race of the *Comnenians* to be butchered without mercy.

End of BOOK III.

USONG.

USONG.

BOOK IV.

THE Perſian army encamped in the fertile plains near Tabris. USONG judged it highly imprudent to purſue a victorious enemy which ſtill retained the ſuperiority. The Emperor had always conſidered that without infantry it was impoſſible to break through the firm cohort of the Janiſſaries; recent experience had now confirmed him in this opinion. At length the tardy ſuccours from Venice arrived, but they ſupplied not the want of men ſkilled in the uſe of fire-arms.

AN awful ſilence reigned in all the Aſſemblies, and even throughout the Imperial Palace. Not one enquired after the fate of their warlike friends, fearful to hear ſome diſmal tidings which might plunge themſelves or others into miſery. A general mourning prevailed throughout all Perſia,

nor

nor was there a ſingle family of diſtinction but what had loſt ſome near relation or regretted friend.

"Now may I weep," ſaid NUSHIRWANI, and retiring, indulged her ſecret ſorrows. At a time of life when ſhe might have hoped long to enjoy the pleaſures of an happy union, ſhe was bereft of a conſort knit to her heart by all the ſoft endearing ties of mutual love. The Emperor's gaiety ſhe ſaw was fled for ever, not the ſmalleſt trace of chearfulneſs had been diſcoverable in his countenance ſince the death of his dear LIOSUA. All her fondneſs now centured in the young *Iſhmael*, whom aided by the moſt wiſe and virtuous amongſt the Perſians, ſhe undertook to educate.

SHE ſcarcely ever left this promiſing youth, ſhe watched with a fond maternal care the ſhoots of his yet infant mind; by the fables of *Locman* and *Saadi*, or ſome ingenious devices of her own, ſhe inſtructed him in the rudiments of wiſdom. As he increaſed in years, fables gave place to ſuch hiſtoric narratives as ſhewed virtue honoured and rewarded, vice contemned and puniſhed.

THIS judicious Princeſs availed herſelf of the art of painting. She knew that ſenſible images attract the notice, and make a much deeper

deeper impreſſion upon the minds of children than mere abſtract ideas. She contrived to exhibit a pictureſque ſyſtem of morality, properly elucidated by ſimple narratives. The young Prince contracted ſuch a reliſh for this mode of inſtruction as was not eaſily ſatiated. Sometimes there was a picture in which a Sultan was repreſented entering a gloomy apartment, wherein nothing was ſeen but a Shepherd's coat and crook. The Sultan was depicted frowning with indignation on his attending courtiers. The Princeſs explained the piece, and ſhewed its reference to the well known hiſtory of the Perſian miniſter of ſtate; ſhe left the young Prince to form his own concluſions, aſſiſting him in the application. "Here, ſaid ſhe, "may my *Iſhmael* ſee how much a Prince "is expoſed to the ſlanderous reports of "envy, and how carefully he ſhould guard "againſt admitting for true, what ſtands in "need of further proofs. That worthy ſer- "vant could not be prevailed upon to ex- "poſe himſelf a ſecond time to the fickle- "neſs of a maſter, who loſt hereby the "firmeſt ſupport of his government. Never "was there a Miniſter more faithful than "*Machmud*; yet could not his many vir- "tues ſcreen him from the attacks of envy.

"The

" The king ſhould have treated with con-
" tempt the rumour, from whence the re-
" port of great treaſures being concealed in
" a private chamber took its riſe. Had he
" acted like a ſagacious Prince he might
" have ſoon been convinced by inſpecting
" *Mohamed*'s accounts, whether or not the
" Vizier really merited the charge of infi-
" delity."

In another picture, a perſpective view of Byzantium was exhibited in all its ſplendor. *Timur*, with whoſe image and features the young Prince was well acquainted, ſeemed to turn away his eyes from the magnificent ſpectacle. " What, ſaid *Timur*, the terror " of the world?" he had received an invitation from the Grecian Emperor to viſit his court, for *Timur* had delivered him from the hands of *Bajazet*, *Machmud*'s anceſtor. But the prudent *Timur* excuſed himſelf by ſaying, " The city is too beautiful, I might " be tempted to covet its poſſeſſion." He therefore departed without requiring ſo much as a ſingle village for the aſſiſtance he had afforded, or as a compenſation for the lives of ſo many thouſands of his braveſt Tartars which had been loſt.

In this manner was the ſoul of *Iſhmael* ſtored with the ſublimeſt images of heroic

virtue; till they became congenial with his nature. By paintings alſo, the various animal and vegetable productions, which embelliſh the earth, were depictured to his view; he ſaw the different ſtates and empires into which the globe was divided; he beheld the produce and riches peculiar to each country, and was made acquainted with the order and motions of the celeſtial Bodies. To refuſe explaining an hiſtoric piece, was the method the fond parent took to puniſh her darling ſon; to inſtruct was to reward him.

Other choſen maſters were appointed to accompliſh him in thoſe bodily exerciſes, ſo gracefully becoming in a Prince; but every precaution was taken not to chuſe a perſon of looſe or profligate manners for his tutor. Not a word was to be uttered, not an expreſſion dopt in his preſence which might have the moſt diſtant tendency to taint his unpolluted mind.

As he encreaſed in years, he was made acquainted with the people over whom he was one day to reign. He received information concerning the different Perſian provinces, the moſt conſiderable cities in the empire, and the natural or artificial productions

tions peculiar to each. NUSHIRWANI elucidated every paſſage ſhe peruſed by quoting ſome enlivening Anecdotes. "Here was "the fair *Panthea* taken captive, and ſent "back unviolated to her conſort, who ſoon "after ſhed his grateful blood for the chaſte, "the generous *Cyrus!* Such, ſaid NUSHIR-"WANI, are the fruits of virtue, it concili-"ates the people's affections, and purchaſes "the otherwiſe invaluable bleſſing of cordial "friendſhip."

ISHMAEL was now ripe enough to receive inſtruction concerning the Deity. NUSHIRWANI endeavoured to impart thoſe exalted notions of the Godhead, which though infinite with reſpect to man, yet but faintly ſhadow out the auguſt inhabitant of eternity. His heart was ſmitten with an ardent love for the benefactor of mankind, and it was only with a profound and reverential awe he was taught to pronounce the tremendous name of that all-powerful judge, in whoſe ſight Emperors, like other men, are but frail duſt. She was indefatigably aſſiduous to prevent the ſmooth oily tongue of flattery from infuſing its venom into the heir of Perſia's mind; it was her chief aim to convince the Prince, that a throne affords no other real grandeur to its poſſeſſor, but

the glorious means of rendering his ſpecies happy. "God, ſaid ſhe, alſo requires and "expects the moſt from thoſe whom he has "inveſted with a portion of his Omnipo-"tence; and woe to him who betrays that "truſt, for the abuſe of which he muſt be "eternally accountable."

SHE deſcribed to him the heads of the imperial houſe, *Cyrus*, *Ardeſchir*, * *Yao*, and *Wuwang*. It was their heroic virtue, their ardent zeal, and unwearied labours for their peoples welfare, which laid the foundation of their greatneſs, and immortalized their names. On the other hand, ſhe failed not to enumerate Monarchs, under whom empires the moſt illuſtrious have reached the period of their diſaſterous fate. Of this number was *Sardanapalus*, *Balſhazzer*, *Tſhew*, and the laſt *Caliphs* of the *Abaſſides*. "Luxury, "ſaid ſhe, depraves the heart and degrades "the human ſpecies to a level with the "brutes. The Prince who commencing "voluptuary, reſigns himſelf up to pleaſure, "ſoon forfeits the confidence of his people, "and is ſecretly deſpiſed even by thoſe "very ſycophants, who lord it over him, "whilſt the ſon, ſucceeding to a throne un-

* Artaxerxes the firſt of the Saſſanides.

"dermined

" dermined by the ſenſual vices of the father,
" is ſhortly buried in its ruins.

" SURVEY now, ſaid NUSHIRWANI, with
" a glow of rapturous delight, ſurvey thy
" great Progenitor; behold him a petty
" Mongalian Prince, a Captive, nay a
" Slave; yet elevated to the Perſian throne
" ſolely on account of his virtues. To
" theſe virtues is my *Iſhmael* indebted for his
" title to the Throne. USONG proſpered
" by virtue, and his iſſue now enjoy the
" fruit of his deſerts. And what did he
" part with in exchange for this throne?
" What did it coſt him? What but the
" chearful performance of his duty, in which
" he found more real delight than the
" wretched Caliphs, amidſt all their volup-
" tuous pleaſures, under the iron rod of their
" Viziers, under the menacing ſabres of
" their own life-guards, and under daily
" apprehenſions of being, before the next
" morning's dawn, forced from the throne,
" and plunged into a grated dungeon.
" USONG is guarded by his ſubjects love
" as by flaming ſwords; his heart bears
" teſtimony to his internal excellence, that
" not a thought is harboured there, which
" he would wiſh concealed from virtue's
" critic eye. His fiery ardour for his peo-

" ples welfare is like ſome luminary, which " diffuſes genial warmth throughout, and " vivifies creation. The world re-echoes " the teſtimony of his conſcience, and " USONG hears his illuſtrious virtues ap- " plauded by the tongues of an hundred na- " tions."

YOUNG *Iſhmael*'s emulous breaſt caught fire; " Shall I be USONG's grandſon and not " be virtuous, not deſerve the world's ap- " plauſe and the approbation of the Supreme? " Shall I baſely degenerate, be reprobated by " God, contemned by the preſent, and ab- " horred as infamous by future genera- " tions?"

THE war with the Ottomans, though not formally terminated by a pacific negotiation, was yet far from being proſecuted with vigour. *Machmud* poſſeſſed his new acquiſitions without moleſting Perſia; he had ſo laid waſte the country between him and USONG, that neither of them could march an army through it, without being expoſed to certain ruin. After *Pir Hamet*'s death USONG had no title to poſſeſs himſelf of Caramania; he was ſenſible of the calamities of war, and the ſhades of his friends, who fell at Arzendgan, were continually preſent to

to his imagination. He made, however, one campaign againſt ſome Georgian Princes, who had rouzed the lion they fancied dead; but USONG ſoon taught them, that Perſia had loſt nothing of its power, and forced the Princes *Gorgora* and *Pancras* to bring him an annual tribute of gold, in token of their ſubjection *.

THE Court at Tabris was encreaſed in ſplendor by the arrival of a numerous embaſſy from the puiſſant King of the Patans. They brought with them magnificent preſents, elephants, and ſeveral other curious animals; the ſight of which afforded USONG infinite pleaſure. The only motive which induced the Patan to ſend this embaſſy was, that he might thereby become better acquainted with a Monarch, in whoſe commendation fame ſpoke ſo loudly.

ANOTHER deputation arrived from ſeveral tribes of the Mongalians. They brought the melancholy news of the death of TIMURTASH, and were unanimous in offering the ſovereignity of their Hords to his illuſtrious ſon, the fame of whoſe exalted deeds had reached even the wilds of Eaſtern Tartary.

* Bizarro.

AFTER ſome little reflexion, USONG returned this anſwer to the ſubjects of his father: "It is eſſential for your happineſs, "my noble brethren, that the Prince "who rules ſhould reſide amongſt you. My "lot has fixed me on the throne of Perſia; "your generous confidence ſenſibly affects "me, and I will endeavour to deſerve it "further. *Tarkemiſh*, of the race of *Tſhen-*"*gis*, has faithfully accompanied me in all "my dangers; he eſcaped the bloody maſſa-"cre at Arzengdan, where many of your "heroic kindred breathed their laſt. Him, "therefore, I propoſe to be your Khan; he "is poſſeſſed of virtues which he will dedi-"cate to your ſervice, whilſt USONG could "only counſel you by means of ſubſtitutes." *Tarkemiſh* was hereupon placed on a ſhield which the nobleſt Mongalians carried on their heads, and he departed with them. He vowed eternal gratitude to the magnanimous USONG, who recollected the promiſe, LIEWANG had exacted from him, never to become a neighbour of the Chineſe Empire.

THE Ambaſſadors remained ſome time at Tabris. USONG invited them to thoſe convivial entertainments which he every evening gave alternately to his ſelect friends, and thoſe whom he choſe to diſtinguiſh on account

count of their merit. To be the Emperor's friend was the reward of eminent desert, and the sole gratification of virtuous ambition. In these select meetings the Emperor was familiar and unreserved; and particularly happy when an opportunity was afforded him of expatiating largely on the most important affairs of government.

THE Patan Ambassador began: "Sove-
"reign of the World *, when I arrived at
"the gate of thy palace, I enquired for thy
"Vizier, in order to deliver to him the let-
"ters from my master's Vizir, and presents
"suitable to the high station to which Per-
"sia's *Pol-star* † is elevated."—"We know
"no Vizier, was the answer I received."
"Perhaps, thought I, Persia has its Kolao,
"or a Vicegerent for every department of
"the State: I enquired therefore for the
"President of the Military Department,
"but could hear of no such officer. In
"like manner was I disappointed in my re-
"searches after the Chiefs of the other De-
"partments of the Law, the Finances, and
"domestic Policy.

* The stile given by the Orientals to Tshengis and Timur.

† The title of the Prime Minister.

"God, continued the Ambaſſador, has "endowed the wiſe Usong with the com- "prehenſive mind of his great anceſtor, the "formidable *Tſhengis*. Like the Sun his "traverſing eye takes in at one view the "whole of his vaſt dominions: But is "Usong, like the Sun, ever indefatigable? "To day it ſhines on the Emperor's head, "not leſs radiant than when it ſhone on the "mighty *Oguz*. Can a Mortal hope to bear "enormous burdens, without ever being "wearied? That ſupreme being has diſ- "tinguiſhed Usong from all mortals, by "endowments of the moſt exalted kind, "leaves him, however, ſubject to the com- "mon fate of men; amongſt whom he holds "the firſt rank. May heaven protect and "lengthen thy days, as thoſe of the firſt "Emperor's, as the days of *Cajumara* *! "But Usong muſt advance in years, and "give place to a Succeſſor. Will the vene- "rable old man be able to ſuſtain the weight "of that burden, to which the ſtrength of "the younger Usong was proportioned? "Will thy Succeſſors have the ſame gi- "gantic ſhoulders to ſupport the burden of

* The firſt Emperor in the fabulous Hiſtory of Perſia; of whom, it is ſaid, that he reigned ſeveral centuries.

"Govern-

" Government, which have enabled USONG " to uphold the Perſian welfare? Pardon, " thou wiſeſt of Monarchs, the ſervant of " thy friend, for preſuming to intimate a " doubt, which proceeds entirely from the " ſincere regard he feels for thy proſperity. " Might not the Emperor, like other " Princes, relieve himſelf by the aſſiſtance of " faithful ſervants? USONG's penetration " would infallibly lead him to chuſe the moſt " capable, and his own vigilance would con- " fine them ſtrictly to the due diſcharge of " their reſpective duties."

USONG replied with that compoſure which, ſince the death of his beloved LIOSUA, had ſupplied the place of his wonted chearful ſmiles. " I am ſenſible of the happineſs of " having the eſteem of wiſe and virtuous " men. I now requeſt the Khan to give " attention to my anſwer.

" BOUNDED as my abilities are, yet never " ſhall I appoint a Prime Vizier. It is my " anxious deſire to be beloved by my peo- " ple, and to ſee them happy. Suppoſe " the Vizier worthy to conduct the helm of " State; the people's gratitude will center " in him, as the origin of all their bleſſings. " 'Tis the Vizier who maintains the laws in " vigour; 'tis he who preſerves domeſtic

" order: The victories gained are his; to " him appertains the granting of petitions, " and the diſtribution of juſtice is altogether " his. Such a Vizir would ſerve as a cloud " between me and my people. Whilſt the " Perſians adored his radiant luſtre, I ſhould " remain obſcured, unnoticed, and unſeen. " My ſole ambition is to do good; I muſt, " therefore, myſelf order and ſee it done.

" SHOULD, on the other hand, the Vizier " be ſubject to great failings; ſhould he be " deſtitute of capacity, or covetous to an " extreme; ſhould he be ambitious of con- " queſt; ſhould he be governed by favourites; " ſhould he depreciate the too conſpicuous " merits of other ſervants of the State; " ſhould the people have juſt cauſe for com- " plaints, then would USONG ſolely bear " the blame. USONG would want diſcern- " ment for having made ſo bad a choice; " he would be deemed ſlothful, for occupying " a Throne, and declining the duties annexed " to royalty, as too laborious and fatiguing. " Thus would USONG be miſerable, for " having loſt the affections of his people; " but he would be far more wretched at " ſeeing his people unhappy. Should he at " length, rouzed from his ſlumber, puniſh " the Vizier, the cauſe of the public murmur,

" ſtill

" ſtill has there been much good neglected,
" which might have been performed; and
" much evil committed, which a leſs potent
" ſervant would not have preſumed to per-
" petrate: All which could not have hap-
" pened, had USONG kept the reins of go-
" vernment in his own hands. And what
" aſſurance is there, that ever a ſecond Vizir
" will manage matters better?

" A PRINCE has no reaſon to be avari-
" cious, he ſinks under the weight of ſuper-
" fluous treaſure. He ſhould not be envious
" of meritorious ſervants; they cannot ſup-
" plant him, he has nothing to dread from
" them. Every ſubject's merit reflects hon-
" our on the Monarch, as it promotes the
" national proſperity. If a laborious hind
" digs a new well, I am thereby enriched;
" no new plough is uſed in the field, without
" conducing to my profit; no branch of
" commerce is extended, but it adds a luſtre
" to my throne: Whereas for every fault
" committed by his unworthy Miniſters,
" USONG ſuffers moſt ſeverely. His own
" happineſs, therefore, requires him to love
" and cheriſh all good ſubjects; to diſ-
" countenance the wicked, encreaſe the
" public happineſs, and ſtrive to avert from
" the Empire every ſpecies of calamity.

" USONG's

" USONG's peace of mind, and the love of " his people, are his choiceſt treaſures; " who then will be more anxious for " USONG's happineſs than USONG himſelf?

" I omit mentioning the ſeveral hiſtories " wherein the vaſt conſequences of a Prince's " vices, or his virtues, are accurately diſ- " played. The Europeans patiently bear " with even the very worſt of Princes; they " ſubmit to them, as to chaſtiſements from " the Supreme, or as to evils in the natural " world, the forked lightning, or ruſhing " hail, with which God, in his diſpleaſure, " afflicts a guilty country. Yet even in thoſe " ſubmiſſive Weſtern Countries, I obſerve " that the good or ill qualities of Miniſters " have more than once cauſed revolutions " in the State. Three potent Viziers among " the Francs *, wreſted the ſceptre out of " the hands of their lawful Sovereigns, the " deſcendants of renowned heroes, and re- " duced them to a condition of tonſured " Derviſes. Flagitious Miniſters have plun- " dered other kingdoms of their wealth: " Neglecting the ſafety of the political veſ- " ſel, they who have been ſtationed at her

* Charles Martel, and the two Pepins.

" helm

" helm, have ſteered her on the fatal rocks,
" where ſhe has been daſhed to pieces.

" WHILST USONG has ſtrength to labour
" for his people, the toil will be his chief
" delight. Here is the advantage virtue
" hath over luxury: Both by practice be-
" come habitual; yet virtue exalts and dig-
" nifies the man, luxury degrades him.
" Every repetition of the former, cauſes an
" increaſe of bliſs; every indulgence of the
" latter palls upon the ſenſe, and at length
" creates diſguſtful loathing. USONG in
" this is not to be pitied; he enjoys what
" gives him moſt delight, the delectable
" pleaſure of ſeeing his people happy.
" What fair Circaſſian beauty can convey
" raptures equal to thoſe I feel, when view-
" ing a town riſing out of an heap of ruins,
" or a new village, whoſe well-clad inha-
" bitants chearfully drive the plough with
" luſty oxen, and at eve aſſemble under a
" ſhady Tſhinar, rejoicing in their children's
" welfare, and the plenteouſneſs of their fer-
" tile lands?

" I KNOW not how my Succeſſors may act,
" neither does my duty extend ſo far. Their
" faults I am not to anſwer for: But of this
" USONG is well convinced—that no nation
" can be happy, whoſe Sovereign will not

" labour,

" labour, and himſelf provide for the public
" welfare. All I can do is, ſo to form my
" next Succeſſor, that I may have reaſon
" to expect he will one day prove a real
" Emperor, and not the maſk of one,
" through which another ſpeaks, and iſſues
" his decrees. The good education of the
" heir apparent, is the only means of effec-
" tually ſecuring the reigning family on the
" Throne, and of perpetuating the happi-
" neſs of an Empire."

USONG ſpoke this with a ſpirit which penetrated the hearts of all who heard him, and excited in the minds of the illuſtrious ſtrangers a laſting veneration for his exalted virtue. The Venetian Envoy, however, concealed not his objections. He was a ſon of liberty, and abhorred deſpotic ſway. He could not conceive how that government could be equitably conducted, where the will of one individual becomes a law to the whole community. " Pardon, ſaid he, thou illuſ-
" trious friend of virtue, if a native of diſ-
" tant climes, views, with ſtrange ſurprize,
" the Eaſtern Conſtitutions. Indulge me
" ſo far as to ſatisfy the ſcruples, which pre-
" judice perhaps may have at firſt engen-
" dered, but which I have long conceived
" againſt an arbitrary Monarchy. If ever
" de-

" deſpotic power finds a victorious advocate,
" it muſt be in USONG, who makes that
" power manifeſtly ſubſervient to the hap-
" pineſs of his ſpecies.

" BUT how many USONGS will hiſtory
" furniſh us with among the deſpotic Sove-
" reigns of the Eaſt? Monarchy to me ap-
" pears legal tyranny, productive of the moſt
" dreadful effects, unleſs a miracle of a man,
" and wonder of the world, is ſeated on the
" Throne. I have carefully peruſed the
" hiſtories of *Harun-Alraſhid*, of *Timur*,
" and ſeveral other Eaſtern Heroes; they
" were, 'tis true, brave Princes, magnani-
" mouſly great, and often equitable. They
" patronized the ſciences, encouraged and
" took pleaſure in the virtues and endow-
" ments of their ſubjects. But theſe good
" qualities imply not the whole of a Sove-
" reign's duty; they inſure not the lives and
" happineſs of the people. How cruelly did
" *Harun*, by the baſeſt jealouſy, ſacrifice
" the virtuous *Giafar*, and deſtroy the *Bar-*
" *mekides*, the moſt illuſtrious race in all
" Arabia? Could ſuch injuſtice have been
" committed, had there been a counſel ap-
" pointed to decide on the crime imputed to
" *Giafar*, whoſe only fault was preferring
" the rights of nature to the obſervance of

" a ſilly, capricious prohibition*? How
" many times has *Timur* extirpated whole
" nations? How often, even after the pro-
" miſe of clemency and pardon, has he left
" the ſword unſheathed to wreak its ven-
" geance? How many bloody wars have
" been kindled by the wild ambition of law-
" leſs Princes? How have the Ottomans
" laid waſte half Aſia, and brought on Eu-
" rope ruinous deſolation, merely becauſe
" a Sultan ſought the title of a *Gazi*†, or
" aimed at enjoying the privilege of a
" *Dſhiami*‡?

" In free States, all matters being deter-
" mined by a majority, it is ſcarcely poſſible
" that an unjuſt decree ſhould be paſſed by
" a multitude, varying from each other in
" ſentiment, and in which their own pri-
" vate advantage is not involved. A cer-
" tain latent pride alſo, harboured in vir-
" tuous breaſts, animates the pointed elo-
" quence of thoſe who combat the advocate

* Harun had married his favourite ſiſter Abaſſai to him; but interdicted him the uſe of the matrimonial rights.

† Signifies Conqueror, which victorious Sultans added to their titles.

‡ A particular moſque, which thoſe Sultans alone were allowed to build; who had enlarged the boundaries of the Empire.

" for

" for an iniquitous meaſure; and hardly will
" he be able to ſupport himſelf againſt both
" the hatred of his antagoniſt, and that truth
" which ever ſtimulates the unprejudiced and
" impartial.

" But with deſpotic Monarchs a ſudden
" guſt of paſſion is an irrevocable ſentence;
" an ebulition of reſentment lays a ſtately
" town in ruins, and an offence, haſtily
" taken at only a ſingle unguarded expreſſion,
" becomes the ſignal of war and carnage.
" The ball inſtantaneouſly follows the flaſh,
" and repentance comes not till the diſaſter
" is irremediable.

" Usong, I perceive, governs according
" to the Perſian cuſtom with unlimited ſway;
" his Empire is a property ſecured to him
" by the affections of his people; but how
" has his virtue found means to contrive it,
" that under a power free from every re-
" ſtraint of law, none ſuffer, none complain,
" but ſo many thouſand voices join in loud
" ſhouts of grateful praiſe?

" A Government, which entruſts the ad-
" miniſtration of affairs to ſeveral judicious
" perſons, cannot undergo a ſudden ſub-
" verſion. The loſs of one worthy member
" admits of conſolation, whilſt ſeveral of a
" ſimilar merit ſtill ſurvive. *Zeno* died, yet

" Venice

" Venice ſtill continued to flouriſh. In a " Monarchy, the welfare of a State depends " on the breath of a ſingle mortal. Scarce " had the world beheld a *Timur* with admi- " ration, but a worthleſs progeny of volup- " tuous, indolent, and incapable Princes " ſucceeded. The mode of election, which " in free States excludes the infamous and " unqualified, has no place in Monarchies, " where the claim of birth is ſuperior to any " other. A great and mighty people muſt " ſubmit to a diabolic tyrant, a *Sardan-Pul*, " and ſhare in his ruin. Thus vaniſhed the " *Timurides*, deſcendants of thoſe deſign- " ed by heaven to ſcourge the affrighted " world."

USONG replied, " I ſhall not retort up- " on the Weſtern Sages, the manifeſt in- " juſtice that hath frequently been com- " mitted by Senates; I will not aſſert " that at Rome, for inſtance, ambition hath " as frequently incited the Senate, even " *Cato* himſelf, to commence unjuſt hoſti- " lities, as a deſire of aggrandizement has " wrought upon *Timur*, or the Ottomans. " I farther admit, that to entruſt one man " with unlimited power is a dangerous ex- " pedient. With God alone omnipotence " can be ſafely truſted; for God alone is

" inſ-

" infinitely wiſe and good. My heart, as " well as yours, revolts at the ſudden, un- " adviſed, and ſanguinary ſentences of death, " ſo frequent in the Eaſt. The precipitate " execution of ſuch bloody mandates is in- " tollerable to the ſubject, and alſo danger- " ous to the Sovereign. When volition is " the only law, men are apt to will too " much; and by this wanton uſe of deſpotic " ſway, the Prince forfeits the confidence of " his people. The reſult is, that, like ſome " ſavage beaſt of prey, he is hunted down, " and deſtroyed by the enraged multitude of " his ſubjects. To me, the blood of the " meaneſt Perſian is of ineſtimable value; " the laws alone have power to ſhed it.

" I HAVE anxiouſly endeavoured to intro- " duce in Perſia a form of government, " which, without being dangerous to the " Monarch, might ſecure the people againſt " the ſudden guſts of uncontrouled paſſion. " Political liberty ſeems no ways adapted to " the genius of the Eaſtern Nations;" (here the Patan bowed reſpectfully, and by his mien and geſtures, gave the Empe- ror to underſtand, that he had an objection to offer, which from reſpect he forbore to intimate) " the violence of their paſſions " ſeems to ſtand in need of that kind of

" con-

" controul, which monarchic power only
" can adminiſter. Thus nothing more re-
" mained, but effectually to ſecure the Per-
" ſians from tyrannical oppreſſion.

" EVERY ſubject, every Court of Juſtice,
" every department of the State, hath a right
" of appeal to the Emperor; they muſt be
" allowed to repreſent not only their pri-
" vate concerns, but alſo the public exigen-
" cies of the empire. The Emperor re-
" ceives every petition, every remonſtrance,
" without the leaſt danger of offence on the
" ſubjects part, or the ſmalleſt riſque of in-
" curring puniſhment.

" THE Emperor ſentences none to death,
" not even thoſe who may have had the au-
" dacity to offer him perſonal inſult. All
" puniſhments, all ſentences are cautiouſly
" deliberated on by the courts of juſtice,
" and the ſuffrages of the majority decide
" each queſtion. A good Emperor has no
" reaſon to apprehend, that behaviour inju-
" rious to him will be ſuffered to go un-
" puniſhed. The right of ſhewing mercy
" he retains, and a prudent Prince will
" freely exerciſe this right. The law con-
" demns delinquents, the Emperor poſſeſſes
" the godlike attribute of mercy, he can

" reſcue

" reſcue them from puniſhment, and pardon
" their offences.

" THE different departments of govern-
" ment are reciprocally independant of each
" other; the Clerical, the Military, the
" Courts of Juſtice, the Offices of Revenue
" and Police, are departments entirely ſepa-
" rate and diſtinct. Amongſt the ſeveral
" members of which, the moſt perfect har-
" mony prevails, the orders of the ſuperior
" being obeyed with alacrity by the inferiors,
" whoſe duty it is to ſee them put in exe-
" cution. The Emperor is the perſon in
" whom all the reports, reſolutions, and
" propoſals of theſe ſeperate departments
" meet as in a center. This partition of
" power forms a ſecurity to the throne, by
" preventing confederacies which might be
" entered into againſt the ſovereign. Amongſt
" the different officers of the ſtate there will
" always ſubſiſt a degree of rivalſhip and
" ſuſpicious jealouſy.

" THE Emperor attempts not to introduce
" any new regulations in theſe departments
" of the State, without firſt conſulting thoſe
" whoſe province it is to take cognizance
" of theſe affairs. The reaſons in ſupport of
" their opinions are thrice diſcuſſed, heard,
" and examined by the Emperor, previous

" to

" to the imperial decree being regiſtered as " a ſtanding edict, during which time the " propoſed amendment is ſuſpended. But " the imperial injunction once promulgated, " it muſt terminate all diſputes and ſilence " every doubt.

" ANOTHER ſecurity alſo to the Emperor " is his Delegates. They conſtitute no part " of the adminiſtration, they have no Coad- " jutors, they are inveſted with no power " but that of deferring the execution of a " decree they imagine injurious to the Em- " pire, or of ſuſpending ſome officer of the " State until the Emperor's pleaſure ſhall " be known. The Emperor alſo upon the " remonſtrance of a Delegate refers it to the " court authorized to take cognizance of " the affair, and hears the arguments al- " leged. It is the Delegate's buſineſs to " attend to every thing without excep- " tion, which can in the leaſt degree con- " duce to the welfare of the ſtate, and " to make his reports accordingly to the " Emperor. He is alſo to take cognizance " of matters which fall not under the juriſ- " diction of the higher departments. Com- " merce, Navigation, and Literature, are alſo " ſubmitted to his inſpection.

" IN

"In the execution of all decrees, the "neceſſary formalities ſhall be tenaciouſly "obſerved, the public acts ſhall be properly "regiſtered: for on ſuch methodical regula- "tions much depends; they mark the cha- "racteriſtic difference between a well-regu- "lated government, and one adminiſtered "with the rude violence of deſpotic barba- "riſm.

"By theſe precautions I imagined the ill "effects of precipitation would be guarded "againſt, and that truth would find a free "and eaſy acceſs to the throne. And yet "more power is left in USONG's hands "than he feels an inclination to exerciſe.

"LASTLY, my friend will, I fancy, ad- "mit that Monarchy has one eſſential ad- "vantage over an Ariſtocracy. The latter "by ſlower degrees approximates to ruin, "but its ruin is without remedy: the heroic "virtues of a few individuals, though of the "moſt exalted kind, cannot ſave the veſſel from "being ingulphed by the deſtructive whirl- "pools in the political ocean; whereas a "ſingle Monarch, if ſeriouſly inclined, can "reſtore tranquility to the moſt diſordered "State, and ſave the moſt confuſed from fall- "ing into ruin. *Veſpaſian* healed the many "wounds his Rome had received from ſix

" to the imperial decree being regiſtered as " a ſtanding edict, during which time the " propoſed amendment is ſuſpended. But " the imperial injunction once promulgated, " it muſt terminate all diſputes and ſilence " every doubt.

" ANOTHER ſecurity alſo to the Emperor " is his Delegates. They conſtitute no part " of the adminiſtration, they have no Coad- " jutors, they are inveſted with no power " but that of deferring the execution of a " decree they imagine injurious to the Em- " pire, or of ſuſpending ſome officer of the " State until the Emperor's pleaſure ſhall " be known. The Emperor alſo upon the " remonſtrance of a Delegate refers it to the " court authorized to take cognizance of " the affair, and hears the arguments al- " leged. It is the Delegate's buſineſs to " attend to every thing without excep- " tion, which can in the leaſt degree con- " duce to the welfare of the ſtate, and " to make his reports accordingly to the " Emperor. He is alſo to take cognizance " of matters which fall not under the juriſ- " diction of the higher departments. Com- " merce, Navigation, and Literature, are alſo " ſubmitted to his inſpection.

" IN

"IN the execution of all decrees, the "neceſſary formalities ſhall be tenaciouſly "obſerved, the public acts ſhall be properly "regiſtered: for on ſuch methodical regula- "tions much depends; they mark the cha- "racteriſtic difference between a well-regu- "lated government, and one adminiſtered "with the rude violence of deſpotic barba- "riſm.

"BY theſe precautions I imagined the ill "effects of precipitation would be guarded "againſt, and that truth would find a free "and eaſy acceſs to the throne. And yet "more power is left in USONG's hands "than he feels an inclination to exerciſe.

"LASTLY, my friend will, I fancy, ad- "mit that Monarchy has one eſſential ad- "vantage over an Ariſtocracy. The latter "by ſlower degrees approximates to ruin, "but its ruin is without remedy: the heroic "virtues of a few individuals, though of the "moſt exalted kind, cannot ſave the veſſel from "being ingulphed by the deſtructive whirl- "pools in the political ocean; whereas a "ſingle Monarch, if ſeriouſly inclined, can "reſtore tranquility to the moſt diſordered "State, and ſave the moſt confuſed from fall- "ing into ruin. *Veſpaſian* healed the many "wounds his Rome had received from ſix

" profligate and inhuman Tyrants, and after " the gloomy reign of a perfidious *Domi-* " *tian*, ſhe ſhone reſplendantly conſpicuous " under the influence of a god-like *Trajan*. " But ever ſince the time of the Gracchi " the Commonwealth was daily on its de- " cline, and haſtening to its final ruin. The " people's hearts being depraved, the laws " themſelves were perverted and applied to " the ſuppreſſion of liberty, and the conſti- " tution was deſtroyed under pretence of " ſupporting it."

THE Emperor deſiſted; ſome new plans of improvement occurred to him, which he afterwards put into execution. He here turned to the *Patan*, and requeſted to be informed of the objection he had to the aſſertion, that a Republic could not ſubſiſt in the Eaſtern countries?

" A NEW people, replied the *Patan*, have " for ſome time paſt appeared on the banks " of the *Indus** ; they have formed themſelves " in every reſpect into a free ſtate, and are " ſuppoſed to be derived from *Tibet*. Theſe " ſtrangers † are numerous, and divided " into twelve tribes. In times of peace

* A great river in Aſia, from which India takes its name Its ſource is near the Mount Imaus.

† The Sheiks, who ſtill continue a powerful nation.

" they

"they have no Chiefs, their code of laws "lies on an altar, and according to its "purport their elders regulate their deciſions. "In war they chooſe a leader; they have "made themſelves maſters of the greateſt "part of the *Indus*, as far as the ſea. Their "love of liberty diſplays itſelf even in their "religious worſhip; they diſclaim external "rites, and adore in ſilence one only God." USONG thanked the Patan Ambaſſador for this information, and turning to the Venetian Envoy, "Thus, ſaid he, has Hin-"doſtan now a confederacy ſimilar to that "of the Helvetians;" for the Emperor was well acquainted with this people, knew their military diſcipline, which though conſonant to perfect freedom, yet was extremely ſtrict, and to the ſeverity of which, as USONG himſelf obſerved, the ſignal victories of thoſe mountaineers might chiefly be attributed.

THE Emperor ſoon after received advice of *Machmud*'s death; a diſorder, attended with excruciating agonies, had put a ſudden period to his exiſtence. The Sultan had turned his arms againſt the Weſtern people and invaded Italy. He ſeemed to meditate the ruin of antient Rome: after having ſubdued the modern. *Bajazet* ſucceeded to

the vacant throne, a Prince inclined to peace, who having his own brother to contend with, laid therefore aſide all thoughts of moleſting Perſia.

USONG now deemed not his preſence to be any longer neceſſary at Tabris. Incited by a ſecret impulſe, he returned to Shiras, where a ſofter climate ſeemed beneficial to his declining age; and where the arts, which had flouriſhed under his munificent protection, had fixed their reſidence. The ladies accompanied the Perſian heir, but the Emperor ſurveyed for the laſt time the Weſtern provinces, and viſited thoſe towns which he had not ſeen before.

HE beheld the flowery plains that ſurround the ancient City of Ardewil, rendered venerable by its ſacred Mauſoleums. He viſited that part of Armenia which is ſubject to Perſia, and the important Tiflis, ſtrongly fortified by its ſituation. He ſaw the ſources of the Euphrates and of the Tigris. Here each day he was gratified with new delights; the whole country was a fertile garden, and ploughs innumerable were now at work, where lonely deer had been accuſtomed to friſk and feed.

EVEN in the parched Meſopotamia and in Irak, the rivers were all branched out, and refreſhing ſtreams fertilized the thirſty plains.

In

In every village USONG ſaw new houſes, the peaſants well dreſſed, their wives bedecked with ſilver ornaments, and from every cot the voice of mirth, of gladneſs, and of health, alternately reſounded.

USONG had ſurvived all reliſh for pleaſures merely ſenſual; but the Hero's heart was enraptured at the ſight of happineſs he had been inſtrumental in procuring. Puniſhments, however, were ſtill ſome times neceſſary.

NOT far from Amadan he met a peaſant leading a horſe richly capariſoned, and diſcovered that he was conducting it to one of the Judges of that city. The Judge was well read in the Perſian poetic authors, he poſſeſſed a fine genius, and the Emperor had received favourable impreſſions of his lively wit and entertaining humour. USONG ordered the peaſant to be followed, and ſoon learnt that his preſent had been accepted, and that the matter depending before the Judge, related to one of the water ducts, which frequently occaſioned violent conteſts amongſt the country people. Both were ſummoned before the Divan, where they both acknowledged their guilt. "Thou, "ſaid the Emperor to the Peaſant, haſt "ſeduced an uſeful man, who poſſeſſed all

"the qualities of a diſcerning Magiſtrate;
"thou haſt robbed Perſia, for what is of
"more value to her than virtuous men?
"Thou ſhalt be baniſhed to Mogoſtan, and
"for thy next crime ſhalt be puniſhed
"with certain death." USONG then turned to the trembling Judge, "Who, ſaid he,
"knew better than thyſelf, that accepting
"preſents is worſe than plundering? It is
"wreſting from the hands of innocence its
"legal property, and transferring it to a
"perverter of juſtice. Thee alſo I baniſh
"to Mogoſtan, and I ſentence thee to live
"in the ſame village with him whom thou
"haſt ſuffered to ſeduce thee, that as often
"as ye meet, ye may remind each other
"that no crime ſhall go unpuniſhed in
"Perſia."

AT length USONG returned to Shiras. His Artiſts had for ſeveral years been deprived of their generous patron's preſence; the arts flouriſhed not without his foſtering aid, for under no other influence could they be reared to ſuch perfection as under that of their cheriſhing Prince. By liberal ſuccours he revived thoſe branches ſeemingly on the decline. The moſt induſtrious amongſt the Artiſts he encouraged, by purchaſing the greateſt part of the goods they had manufactured.

factured. The Chineſe had now greatly improved their arts; whole villages were ſurrounded with plantations of Mulberry-trees for the hatching of Silk-worms, and many new buildings were erected for the manufacturing of the fineſt painted Cottons. In many parts of Perſia the Chineſe porcelain was imitated to a prodigious nicety; nay, for hardneſs, beauty of the colours, and elegance of the taſte, it far ſurpaſſed the Chineſe original.

THE firſt order iſſued by the Emperor on his return was, that a Mauſoleum ſhould be erected to his beloved LIOSUA's memory. He choſe for that purpoſe an eminence in view of the imperial palace. The Mauſoleum was erected after the Chineſe taſte, and white naphtha burned day and night in ſilver lamps around the Empreſs's coffin. Some of her oldeſt ſervants were appointed as attendants on the tomb, and the office was conferred on them as an eaſy employment, and choſen as a means of conſoling them in their declining years.

USONG iſſued ſeveral new ordinances, for the Emperor amidſt all his fatiguing cares, was indefatigably attentive to every concern of his immenſe empire; he extended his care over every part as if he had only a few

villages to govern *. He ſaw the flouriſhing ſtate of commerce, the caravans came from Halep to Moſul laden with Weſtern merchandizes; the wares of Tartary were brought from Bokhara to Meſched, and the treaſures of the wealth-yielding India were brought by the way of Candahar to Shiras. Veſſels from Arabia, from Guzurat, and from Atſhin, arrived at Baſora freighted with the produce of their countries and the rich ſtores of the fortunate iſle of Serendib †.

USONG knew that commerce was the ſecond ſupport of a ſtate, for Agriculture he ſtill preferred as of indiſpenſible neceſſity. Some Caravans had been attacked, the Uſbecks had again begun their depredations, and the trade to Bokhara had repeatedly been obſtructed. USONG iſſued a proclamation, wherein he promiſed to reimburſe out of the Public Treaſury, the full value of the goods, of which the owners had been plundered on the roads, and the governors were ordered to claim a reimburſement of the amount from the the different diſtricts and provinces wherein the robberies were

* So Della Valle ſays of the firſt Abbas.
† Ceylon.

committed.

committed. This ſalutary edict, which even the moſt poliſhed ſtates have not had the generoſity to adopt, has ſince been ſacredly obſerved in Perſia, even under the moſt oppreſſive reigns *. The provinces ſoon hit upon expedients to prevent the frequency of robberies, and conſequently their being often charged with ſuch reſtitutions, they appointed a horſe Patrol † well armed, to traverſe the roads; their numbers were proportioned to the danger each diſtrict was expoſed to, and this eaſy expedient ſoon ſo effectually freed the roads from danger, that a perſon might travel in perfect ſecurity from Orfa to Candahar, though carrying his money in his hand. As the horſe Patrol were continually paſſing and repaſſing on all the roads, every traveller was obliged to take out paſſports at the different towns, without which they were not allowed to travel. The robbers now deſpaired of committing their depredations without being purſued and taken, and henceforth carefully avoided the Perſian territories. All Perſians, and particularly the Militia of the

* So late as during the reign of Shach Nadir, full ſatisfaction was made to the Engliſh Company for a large robbery they ſuſtained at Aſterabad, from the Rebels. Hanway.

† Della Valle, Tom VI. calls them Rahdar.

province, were ordered to aſſiſt the Patrol, and ſeverely would USONG have chaſtiſed the inſolence of the Military, who receiving the nation's pay, ſhould decline to act for its internal ſafety. The inconvenience of depredations was now ſolely felt by the Ottomans, ſtrangers to a well regulated police; throughout all their provinces devaſtations were committed by troops of ſavage Freebooters.

THE Emperor now called to mind the hint of the Patan Ambaſſador; his advanced age required ſome abatement of his rigorous application. He nominated chiefs to the principal departments; and each had a Preſident, who in conjunction with the Emperor, tranſacted the buſineſs of his office. Four days in every week were aſſigned for thoſe great Officers; on the other days the Emperor adjuſted the general concerns of the State, in the preſence of all his chiefs; the intervals of leiſure were employed in peruſing and anſwering the letters received from the Delegates. Each Preſident had four aſſeſſors, all of whom were taken out of the ſame department over which they reſpectively preſided. The uſual courſe of buſineſs was as follows: the Preſident propoſed all matters to the Emperor, the evidence was expected

expected to be ready to produce; for it often happened, if ſo adviſed by a Delegate, that the Emperor examined on the ſpot whether the allegations fully correſponded with the evidence, and on finding any thing amiſs, though but in the moſt trivial circumſtances, he became inexorable. If the affair was of a too complex nature, he ordered the vouchers to be laid before him, and either carefully inſpected them himſelf at his leiſure hours, or entruſted them to the examination of a ſervant in whom he could ſafely confide. He obſerved it as an invariable rule, that previous to every final determination, the Preſident and each of the Aſſeſſors were to deliver in their ſeveral opinions in writing. Preſerving theſe papers made them cautiouſly guard againſt even the moſt trivial errors. USONG did not, however, aboliſh the right, to which every ſubject laid claim, of petitioning the Emperor, on the contrary, public audiences were daily continued for this purpoſe.

ISHMAEL was now arrived at an age capable of receiving the moſt important inſtructions. USONG ſelected out of each department a ſkilful perſon of affable deportment to inſtruct him, and added a fifth to initiate him in the general principles of government.

Thus from his youth he was tutored in the religion, the laws, the finances, the police, and the martial diſcipline of the Perſian empire. To the uſe of arms he was trained by being preſent at each review of the Imperial Guard and the Militia quartered in the neighbouring towns, youth beſt receiving its inſtructions through the ſenſes. He was ſhewn the neceſſary arts and manufactures, the method of caſting cannon, the Armourers work-ſhops, and all the principal branches of commerce. The Emperor alſo cauſed the *Shach-Sadi* to be preſent at the diſcuſſion of law queſtions; he heard the arguments of the referring judge, and the reaſons in ſupport of the ſentence; he was practiſed in the various arts of horſemanſhip, was taught to fence, nor was even ſwimming omitted. His temper was fiery, yet flexible; through every avenue he flew to glory, and the bright example of his illuſtrious progenitor, ſpurred him on with vehemence towards perfection.

The annual circuits, now too fatiguing for the aged Monarch, the young Prince undertook. Choſen companions were ſent with him, who directed his attention to every thing worthy obſervation. He made his own reports to the Emperor, and joined his remarks

remarks on all that he had ſeen of importance in the four departments. The people always cheriſh a fondneſs for their young Princes, and a favourable prepoſſeſſion ever ariſes in their breaſts, when they perceive in the bloom of youth, the ripening ſeeds of wiſdom. Affable as his Grandſire, capable as NUSHIRWANI, graceful as *Haider*, *Iſhmael* captivated every heart, and felt within himſelf a glow of delight at the effuſions of affection poured on him from every quarter.

USONG was too noble minded to be jealous; he provided alſo that *Iſhmael* ſhould be taught to conduct a war. An inſurrection of ſome Balluſhes, a ſavage tribe of the Patans, inhabiting a mountainous tract ſouth of that country, obliged the Emperor to ſend a ſmall detachment againſt them. The experienced *Sherin* had the command, and *Iſhmael* accompanied him as a volunteer. *Sherin* explained to him the motives of every order iſſued, and ſhewed him the conſequence of every movement the army made.

THE Khan, with much cautious circumſpection, advanced amongſt the mountains; he always ſecured himſelf of an eminence before the main body advanced, and the fire-arms, though he had but few with him, ſtruck ſuch a terror into the unarmed ſavages, that

that they were quickly obliged to ſurrender. They laid down their arms at the foot of a riſing hill, on which *Iſhmael* ſtood dreſſed in a ſplendid armour, to accept the hoſtages they gave. Fortifications were erected in the moſt neceſſary places, and a flying camp for ſome years occupied the entrance of the mountains. *Iſhmael* returned full of youth, full of exulting joy, full of impatience to relate to the Emperor the particulars of the campaign. His heart dilated and beat high with rapture at his firſt victory. USONG embraced with tenderneſs the amiable Prince, and now introduced him into the aſſemblies of the four departments. Sometimes he aſked his opinion, either approved it, or kindly rectified his error; thus he was by degrees accuſtomed to the burthen which, according to the courſe of nature, would ſoon devolve upon his ſhoulders.

NUSHIRWANI was indefatigable in endeavouring, by every means of amuſement, to ſolace her father in his encreaſing years. Sometimes ſhe had combats of wild beaſts, at which the Emperor expreſſed his pleaſure; becauſe, as he ſaid, at each of thoſe rencounters a ferocious robber ſurely periſhed. She cauſed a choice collection of the moſt curious animals to be made, ſo that

at

at USONG's court was ſeen the Baburath, reſembling a lion in its main, and whoſe reddiſh hide is ſpeckled with blacks*. The Ethiopian Giraffa, having a camel's neck, and ſpotted like a panther, in a ſhape moſt hideous, diſplays an harmleſs gentleneſs of nature. The Princeſs frequently ordered the guards to perform their various evolutions, and mock attacks. At other times a number of Artiſts appeared, each preſenting ſomething of his own manufacturing; and among theſe NUSHIRWANI always contrived to convey ſome ſtriking novelty. Now Indian gems were preſented to the Emperor, in the examination of which he beſtowed a few leiſure moments, for he was well acquainted with their beauties and defects; then Poets were ſent for, to recite their choiceſt productions in his preſence: Wreſtling, and other gymnaſtic ſports, were inſtituted by the Princeſs; prizes were allotted to the victors, and they were interdicted from ſhedding each other's blood. Rewards alſo were dealt out to the ſwifteſt runners, and horſe-racers of the greateſt ſpeed; the latter USONG judged of vaſt utility, as exciting the Perſians to improve their noble breed of

* From Contarini's and Barbaro's Embaſſies to USONG.

horſes

horſes by Arabian ſtallions, which to this day have been deemed far ſuperior to the Perſian.

USONG was thoroughly ſenſible that this ſucceſſion of various entertainments was artfully contrived by his tender NUSHIRWANI, to alleviate his cares; on which account he affected to take more delight in ſuch pleaſures than he in reality felt: For never ſince the death of his charming LIOSUA had he recovered his wonted chearfulneſs. He lived, however, with the Trabizontine Deſpoina on terms of the moſt cordial eſteem; and was the more attentive to procure her happineſs, as the diſaſtrous calamity which had befallen her family might, in part, be attributed to him. USONG's health, ſo much impaired by his former illneſs, had been declining daily, and a general languor prevailed throughout his frame. In the ſilent dead of night, he was often ſeen caſting a mournful, melancholy glance, towards his LIOSUA's mauſoleum; and though his feeling heart was averſe to giving his preſent Conſort pain, by a relation of the pangs it ſuffered, yet it was too viſible that he would not now be long ſeperated from his darling LIOSUA.

A NEW Embaſſy from Venice diverted the Emperor's melancholy. *Joſeph Barbaro*, one of the Nobles, had been deputed to wait on USONG, and ſtrengthen the bands of of mutual amity that ſubſiſted between him and the Republic. He brought freſh ſupplies of warlike implements, together with able and experienced workmen. He was accompanied by *Nicholo Creſpo*, Duke of ſome iſlands in the Ægean ſea, a young and moſt amiable Prince; who joined to the ſweetneſs and urbanity of the European manners all the attractive gracefulneſs of figure.

ZENO ſtill lived, and ſent his illuſtrious friend ſome books, printed with the newly-invented metal types; an art which then had made great progreſs amongſt the Europeans. Some of the beſt Italian and ancient Roman hiſtories were of the number. *Zeno* rejoiced that he had been one of the firſt admirers of USONG's internal excellence, and the firſt to love him for it.

THE Empreſs enjoyed all the religious liberty ſhe could have expected in a Chriſtian Court of Aſia. She had a chapel aſſigned her, where ſhe regularly attended her devotions. It was on one of the chriſtian feſtivals that her younger ſiſter, the beauteous *Eudoxia*, attended her. *Creſpo* happened to be

be preſent, and attentively obſerved the charms of the young Trebizontine Princeſs, which were diſplayed under the moſt becoming, yet decent apparel. The captivating aſſemblage of devotion, unaffected humility, and Princely dignity, ſtruck him; the Duke of Naxos could not behold, and be indifferent to ſuch beauty. The virtue, too conſpicuous in her graceful mein and whole deportment, pleaſed him yet more than all her perſonal charms. He had frequent opportunity of ſeeing her, and daily grew more and more enamoured.

THE Empreſs looked upon all Chriſtians as her kindred; yet took care to pay that deference to the Prince of Naxos, due to his illuſtrious birth and amiable qualities. Encouraged by her kind treatment, he ventured to declare his paſſion, and to acquaint the Deſpoina how ardently deſirous he was to merit the hand of her lovely ſiſter. Though the thought of ſeperating was diſagreeable to the Empreſs, yet ſhe ſaw a much more certain proſpect of happineſs for her ſiſter, by a marriage with a Chriſtian, than any Mahometan Prince. It is true that, as to herſelf, ſhe had met with every indulgence in her religious principles; yet ſhe well knew how ſolicitous the Eaſtern Princes

Princes were to bring the fair inhabitants of their Harems to embrace their faith and worſhip. She, therefore, countenanced the hopes of *Creſpo*, and procured him the means of declaring his paſſion to the young Princeſs. *Creſpo* ſucceeded ſo well in his amorous ſuit, that the only condition *Eudoxia* impoſed was, that he ſhould obtain the conſent of USONG, her beneficent Protector. His conſent was ſoon obtained; for his natural benignity led him to conſult only the real happineſs of thoſe he loved. He perceived no valid objection againſt the Duke's propoſal, and the nuptials were ſoon to be celebrated in private; but not a ſyllable was ſuffered to tranſpire. For in the Eaſt, the mention of a Lady's name, by way of public converſation, alarms her virtue, and incurs her diſpleaſure.

EUDOXIA was once on a viſit to the virtuous NUSHIRWANI, when young *Iſhmael* entered unexpectedly his mother's apartment, having a juvenile petition to prefer. *Eudoxia* could not withdraw; ſhe was unveiled, and dreſſed in all the eaſy freedom of perſons on a viſit of friendly intimacy. *Iſhmael* had but too fatal a ſight of this attractive fair one; he ſaw with equal rapture thoſe charms which had captivated the Gre-

cian

cian Prince. *Eudoxia* retired as ſoon as poſſible; but her eyes had exerciſed their magic power, and *Iſhmael* was inflamed with all the paſſionate vehemence of an Oriental: He ſaw no proſpect of happineſs, but what was centered in the beauteous Grecian.

UNABLE to conquer his paſſion, he ſolicited his mother's interceſſion with the Emperor. As ſole heir to the Perſian throne, he was not to remain long in a ſtate of celibacy; he therefore hoped he ſhould not be refuſed the only bride with whom he could ever think of being happy.

NUSHIRWANI loved her ſon, but virtue more: She had all that delicate ſenſe of rectitude for which her glorious anceſtor, whoſe name ſhe bore, was ſo juſtly celebrated. She made the fervid *Iſhmael* acquainted with each circumſtance relating to the prior engagement of the fair Princeſs, from whence ſhe took occaſion to infer, that *Eudoxia* was no longer at her own diſpoſal, and, therefore, that his paſſion was inconſiſtent with the laws. On this he broke out in the bittereſt lamentations, and his maternal reverence prevented him not, in his mother's hearing, from venting ſharp invectives againſt his rival; accompanied with expreſſions which implied a ſecret menace. His atten-

attendants alſo related, that on returning from his mother to his own apartment, he had broke out into violent fits of rage, reſentment, and paſſion.

NUSHIRWANI hoped that the magnanimous USONG would ſoon moderate the wrath of the fiery Prince, and thus prevent a rupture that muſt prove highly diſagreeable to the Emperor; who was himſelf all mildneſs, and in whoſe illuſtrious family no paſſion had diſplayed itſelf, but ſuch as virtue firſt approved.

USONG ſent for the Prince of Perſia: "*Iſhmael*, ſaid the venerable Monarch, is "ſenſible how well I love him; he knows "that he is the ſole object of all my labour. "What I do for Perſia, for his ſake I do "it; in hopes that he may one day ſucceed "to a proſperous and tranquil Empire. "But I love a virtuous *Iſhmael*, an *Iſhmael* "who aſpires to the glory of being a good "and virtuous Monarch: An unjuſt, arbi-"trary, a tyrannic *Iſhmael*, never can I love; "not even though he were my deareſt NU-"SHIRWANI's ſon.

"ISHMAEL is but two ſteps removed from "the Perſian throne; and, in a very few "years, will he experience a ſceptre's "weight. But it may be lightened, if *Iſhmael* "aſcends

" aſcends the Throne with a reputation for
" virtue. If Perſia has reaſon to hope for
" happineſs under him, all hearts will cor-
" dially embrace him, and his ſovereign
" decrees will be obeyed, as if they were the
" unanimous will of Perſia.

" But ſhould my Succeſſor prove a Prince
" who will make juſtice yield to his laſci-
" vious deſires; who will attempt to ſnatch
" a betrothed virgin from her intended bride-
" groom's arms, and thus diſſolve thoſe
" bands which no earthly power ſhould dare
" to break aſunder; ſhould ſuch be my Suc-
" ceſſor, what has Perſia to expect from
" *Iſhmael?* If the young tyger, whilſt in the
" chain of parental authority, begins already
" to howl for prey, to dart his yet tender
" talons, and uſe them in brutal acts of vio-
" lence and ferocity, who can be ſecure
" from a tyrannic ravager, under no con-
" troul of law, and not to be reſtrained by
" the ties of equity or juſtice?

" But heaven forbid that my *Iſhmael*
" ſhould be ſo compleatly wretched! He will
" not ſurely forego the honour of being a
" virtuous Prince, for the gratification of a
" momentary paſſion; the roving deſires of
" a youthful fancy will not ſurely have a
" greater aſcendency over him than the
" hopes

" hopes of a proſperous reign, of the ap-
" plauſe of all his Perſians, and the hap-
" pineſs of a life, the perſpective view of
" which reaches to a vaſt extent?"

ISHMAEL was fiery, but he was virtuous; he bowed ſubmiſſive, and reſpectfully kiſſing the Emperor's hand, ſaid, the only requeſt he had to make was, that ſince he muſt for ever loſe the lovely *Eudoxia*, he hoped his abſence from Court, when her marriage was ſolemnized, would be diſpenſed with; ſince to ſee her ſurrender herſelf into the arms of a happy rival, might, he feared, prove a trial far too ſevere for his feeble virtue to encounter.

THE Uſbecks having made an irruption into Khoraſſan, USONG diſpatched *Nortimur*, one of the few ſurviving Nowians, with a body of light-troops againſt them. *Iſhmael*, to improve himſelf in military knowledge, marched with the Perſians, to reduce thoſe Ravagers. *Nortimur* intended not merely to repel them, as that would produce only a ſhort reſpite to Perſia; he determined to chaſtiſe them with that ſeverity, as ſhould deter them, for many years to come from annoying their peace-loving neighbours.

No ſooner were they apprized of the approach of the Perſians, than they retired to-

towards their frontiers. The plains of Khoraſſan were in their rear; they poſted themſelves in a narrow paſs, between craggy precipices, the road through which led to their ſavage country.

NORTIMUR procured a multitude of horſes, a booty moſt acceptable to the Uſbecks. He encamped in the plain on this ſide the valley, occupied by the enemy; he drew up his people in ſo compact a body, that their numbers appeared inconſiderable; the horſes were turned out, under a ſmall guard, to graze in the meadows between the foe and him. The Banditti, whoſe paſſion for plunder fear only could reſtrain, imagining they had now an eaſy prey before them, ſallied out of their ſtrong entrenchment, ſeized with eagerneſs the horſes, whoſe guard betook themſelves to inſtant flight. *Nortimur* himſelf retreated.

HE now ſaw the Uſbecks ſolely occupied in catching the horſes, as they ſtrayed affrighted from the paſture; almoſt every one of them was dragging after him a horſe, which followed with reluctance his unknown maſter. *Nortimur* thereupon ordered the Perſian banner to advance. The troops, who knew their ſignal of attack, ruſhed with their Hircanian ſabres in hand, full ſpeed among the ſcattered Uſbecks; they met

met with little reſiſtance from the enemy, who were too much encumbered with their booty to make head againſt them. They fled to the vale, through which their retreat lay, but the paſs was ſo narrow that ſcarcely more than one abreaſt could penetrate; the greateſt part fell victims to the Perſian vengeance, which they had ſo frequently provoked, and hardly any eſcaped.

NORTIMUR purſued them, and took poſſeſſion of their beſt towns; for lawleſs plunderers once defeated, looſe all their courage, and are abandoned to timidity. It was not the General's wiſh to extend the Perſian boundaries, yet would he not negotiate a peace with the enemy, until he had obliged them to deliver up a number of their *Murſes* as hoſtages, to be every third year exchanged for an equal number. Theſe hoſtages were diſtributed in the ſtrong towns of Khoraſſan, where, liberty excepted, they enjoyed every happineſs the humanity and hoſpitable treatment of the Perſians could confer upon them. It was USONG's wiſh to conciliate their affections; with many of them he ſucceeded.

WHILST *Nortimur* was thus buſied in aſſerting Perſia's honour, whilſt *Iſhmael* was gratifying the reſtleſs ardour of his gallant ſpirit, by acquiring military ſkill and glory, the

beautiful *Eudoxia*'s nuptials were ſolemnized at Shiras, and the noble pair ſoon after quitted Perſia. They fixed their reſidence at Venice, and their daughters afterwards intermarried in the nobleſt families of the Republic*. USONG diſmiſſed them, with preſents worthy his liberality; *Iſhmael* returned, fluſhed with military ſucceſs, and the object of his paſſion was far removed from his preſence.

USONG now chiefly occupied himſelf in drawing up inſtructions for his Succeſſor; a copy of which was depoſited with each of the four departments of State, that Perſia might know by what maxims USONG governed, and that *Iſhmael* might expect his adminiſtration would be compared with the counſels of his illuſtrious Progenitor, and that his character would depend on his conformity to thoſe councils. "I, ſaid the "noble USONG, have no ſecret; would to "God that every Perſian could look into my "heart, and ſee the motives by which it has "been actuated in all its undertakings." The original he propoſed to deliver himſelf into *Iſhmael*'s hands, upon a certain ſolemn occaſion; it was written with his own hand, and contained the ſubſtance of the following Abſtract.

* Bizarro.

THE

THE LAST COUNSELS OF USONG, EMPEROR OF *PERSIA*, TO THE SHACH SADE ISHMAEL.

USONG tenders to his beloved Grandſon thoſe counſels, the utility of which he himſelf has experienced; long has he lived, long has he reigned, and has ever found that *Virtue is the only real wiſdom.*

DREAD nothing ſo much, my Son, as thine own power, it is boundleſs; the Perſians have placed in me an unlimited confidence, they have raiſed me to the throne without preſcribing terms to my ſovereignty. This deſpotic power is a bleſſing, when exerciſed with wiſdom; it is a curſe, and will bring on thine and thy people's miſery, if once thy wayward will becomes the only rule of thy actions. Preſcribe bounds to

thyſelf, divide thy power with the laws, with the eſtabliſhed forms, and with the conſtitution of the Empire; retain only ſuch a portion of power as may enable thee to promote the general welfare of the State. Examine minutely each requiſition of thy will; maturely weigh each riſing wiſh before thou doſt attempt to put it into execution. If it be ſuch as thou wouldſt bluſh to avow to thy people, reject it; in this caſe it is thy greateſt enemy.

BEAR in mind that we are always inclined to love what renders us moſt happy. If the Perſians live in peace and liberty under thy government; if no foreign foe moleſts them; if they enjoy the fruits of their labour in quietneſs; if equity prevails in the Courts of Juſtice; if none but thoſe whom the law condemns ſuffer, then will all Perſians love that Emperor, under whoſe lenient ſway they enjoy ſo much felicity; and even Foreigners will flock for ſhelter under thy protecting wings.

BUT if thou art deſirous that thy Empire ſhall be well-governed, thou thyſelf muſt reign. Delight, therefore, in labour, and aſſign the moſt convenient time for every kind of buſineſs; neglect not a ſingle hour thou haſt promiſed to the State, that would

be

be a theft on Perſia. If thou doſt accuſtom thyſelf to fulfil thy duty, thy duty will become eaſy and delightful; a frequent will ſoon bring on a conſtant neglect, as diſorder begets diſorderlineſs.

FEAR not labour, labour is the parent of honour, as honour is of ſecurity. Be true to virtue, and ſafely mayeſt thou indulge a ſelf-approving thought; a conſciouſneſs of interior worth will ſilence the noiſy turbulence of vicious paſſions: vice will not dare approach that heart with which it has carried on no previous correſpondence. If once thou doſt yield to luxury, all ſelf-eſteem is at an end; and how ſhall others honour him who cannot but deſpiſe himſelf?

SLOTH is the greateſt failing of a Prince. A ſlothful Monarch betrays his people; he barters them with his favourites for inglorious eaſe; he ſhamefully renounces the honour of being the ſource of public welfare, and meanly reduces himſelf to the condition of a ſhadow, which reflects indeed the reſemblance of a man, but follows in every thing the motions of another: The people ſuffer more under a ſlothful than under a wicked Prince. A diſcretionary power to oppreſs being lodged in the hands of ſo many inferior miniſters, tyranny forces

its way into the dwellings of the pooreſt cottagers; whereas none but courtiers are the moſt expoſed to a tyrant's rage.

PERSIA has plenty of handſome women, and choice of the moſt exquiſitely luſcious fruits to ſatisfy the Emperor's deſires; but let not thy ſoul's chief aim be ſenſual pleaſures; they will relax the tone of application, unqualify thee for ſerious buſineſs, and thus thy throne will ſoon become a couch on which thine honour and felicity will be indolently dozed away.

MAKE the welfare of thy people thy ſupreme delight, place thy happineſs in their proſperity, thy riches in their encreaſing numbers, and with exulting mind rejoice when none of them have cauſe to murmur or repine.

RISE early, the day that late begins is loſt; each day give audience to thy ſubjects; if thou doſt but lend an ear to their complaints, they will think them half redreſſed; conquer any impatience thou mayeſt feel when ſeated on the throne; ne'er let chagrin diſfigure thy manly viſage, think that one hour well employed produces ten of happineſs, as every hour idly thrown away produces ten of poignant miſery.

ADDICT not thyſelf too much to the pleaſures of the chaſe; a life like thine is too important to be prodigally fooled away; every day thou giveſt to the chaſe robs many ſubjects of their happineſs.

HOLD daily conſultation with thy chief miniſters; one department of the ſtate neglected, a pillar of the empire ſinks to ruin.

IT is not in thy power to ſee all, but much thou mayeſt inſpect thyſelf. Give not a ſervant room to think that he may deceive thee by unjuſt counſels and eſcape detection; watch over, ſuddenly ſurprize them, and by ſome ſtratagem put their probity to the teſt.

ACCEPT not a ſingle preſent, nor ſuffer others to accept any. They poiſon the minds of the great, and are inſufferably burthenſome to the body of the people; when grandees bribe an Emperor it is done at the nations expence. Proclaim it throughout all Perſia that thou wilt ſooner pardon theft than bribery *.

SELDOM iſſue new edicts, enjoin thy ſubjects to obey the eſtabliſhed laws, but be careful not to multiply their duties. Meddle

* Accepting of preſents is, and has always been, the capital fault and the ruin of all Eaſtern governments.

not with their domeſtic concerns, nor preſcribe modes of apparel to them; incommode them not by wanton and unneceſſary injunctions.

THE Perſians love ſplendor and magnificence; they are expenſive, they impoveriſh the great, provoke their avarice, and thus wealth becomes eſteemed as the only virtue, and ſterling merit is contemned, unleſs tricked out in the gaudy trappings of gay attire. The poor man ſcarcely poſſeſſed of neceſſaries, muſt pay towards ſupporting thoſe in power in their prodigality, he muſt ſtarve that they may riot in abundance. A throne requires great pomp, great ſplendor to dazzle vulgar eyes, and pleaſe the rabble; but never do thou countenance oſtentatious parade in thy ſervants; pay no regard to thoſe who ſhine in coſtly habits, nor give a preference to him that ſparkles with glittering diamonds. Let thy people ſee that a prodigal is thine averſion, and that thou doſt not look for diſintereſtedneſs in that ſervant whoſe neceſſities are inſatiable.

CHERISH the ſciences, they are both uſeful and entertaining; they elevate the ſoul and expoſe to her conſtant view the radiant crown, wherewith the veneration of the world diſtinguiſhes the worth and virtue of a meri-

meritorious Prince. Cultivate amongſt thy people a taſte for the ſciences, none are ſo prone to ſeditious tumults as Barbarians; poliſhed nations may be managed with a ſilken rein, Barbarians are headſtrong and muſt be curbed.

AVOID too extenſive conqueſts: a ſtate is then large enough when it ſtands not in dread of its aſpiring neighbours; conqueſts compenſate not for the miſeries a victor brings upon his people. Be not the firſt to begin an attack, but if thy ſubjects ſuſtain an injury, or the empire an indignity, then defend thyſelf with all the heroiſm and magnanimity of an Emperor.

CONTRACT few debts, and ſuch as thou doſt contract, pay with expeditious punctuality. Undertake no enterprize, unleſs thou haſt in hand a fund to ſupply the exigencies thereof: national debts oblige a Prince to oppreſs his people; if they have been incurred through neceſſity to ſupport a war, the people feel even in times of peace the weighty burthen of war.

BE tenaciouſly exact in the performance of thy promiſe; perfidy may ſometimes gain a temporary advantage, but it leaves behind a laſting evil. A Monarch who forfeits his royal word makes ſecret enemies of all his

neighbours. Let but ſome alarming danger threaten him, he in that hour will find himſelf without a friend.

In thy behaviour towards other Princes diveſt thyſelf of pride; be affable, be courteous: arrogance has been the downfal of many potent ſovereigns. One neighbouring Prince attacked an haughty Monarch and all the others joined in confederacy againſt him. Why ſhouldſt thou treat others in a manner thou wouldſt not endure from them?

Have no favourite: thine ear muſt be open, thy juſtice muſt extend alike to all thy ſubjects, thy rewards are due to merit only. Thy favour muſt be proportioned out, it is too powerful to alight on one man, it would intoxicate him; thy bounty might enrich him, but 'twould be at thy people's coſt.

Make not the ſmalleſt innovation in the conſtitution of the empire, though on the moſt ſpecious grounds, without previouſly conſulting the four departments; let them deliver their opinions ſubſcribed, and take time maturely to deliberate on the propoſal; Laws gradually acquire the veneration of the people on account of their antiquity and permanency; new laws imply that the Legiſlator has once erred, and why may he not err again?

Allow

ALLOW of no hereditary places; an error this in policy which has cauſed the ruin of ſome of the moſt powerful weſtern Princes. Aſſign no penſions payable out of the revenues of ſome particular towns or villages *; thy ſubjects would be oppreſſed by the powerful officers, and the ſalaries of the inferior ſervants would be curtailed. Let all the payments be made out of the treaſury.

REVERE the religious rites, frequent the public Meſchides, ſo ſhall thy ſubjects reverence thee and follow thy example. Shouldſt thou neglect the public worſhip, all veneration for the Supreme will be baniſhed from amongſt thy people.

ADHERE to the doctrine of thine anceſtor *Ali*; confide in one only God, bear in mind that he ſees thy every ſecret thought, and that to him thou art accountable for all thy actions; yet freely tolerate thoſe of a different perſuaſion, and they will unite in ardent prayers for thy welfare; whereas, ſhouldſt thou harraſs them with perſecution, it would create thee the enmity of thouſands whoſe love thou might ſecure. And why ſhouldſt

* Theſe Tyuls, or Aſſignments, are the greateſt political defects in Perſia. Chardin, Tom. VI.

thou, who art thy people's father, make one foe amongſt them?

INSPECT and ſupport the ſchools; chuſe pious Mollahs; can he excite virtue in the hearts of others, who has baniſhed it from his own?

EMPLOY no prieſts in ſecular affairs, they have a duty on their hands far more important; eternity is their concern. By intermedling with ſtate affairs they neglect their ſacred functions, and their political notions are too contracted to render them fit to be entruſted with civil employments. Let the example of the Ottomans forewarn thee: a Mufti, who by a Fetſah condemns a Vizier to death, will ſoon preſume to paſs ſentence on the Sultan.

ENCOURAGE not the encreaſe of the Derviſes; why ſhouldſt thou depopulate thy empire? A huſband takes a part in the welfare of the nation, his children alſo partake in common of the national proſperity; like pledges lent to their country, they muſt ſtand or fall with its political happineſs or miſery.

LOVE peace, but learn the art of war; peace can only be maintained by conſtant readineſs for war. Thou ſhouldſt be well and fami-

familiarly acquainted with all military manoeuvres and regulations. Head thy own troops in perſon; under their emperor's eye the Perſians will fight with redoubled ardour. When a general commands, the diſtribution of rewards, and honours is partial; he has his friends, his favour is limited; the Emperor has his ſubjects, and he loves them all.

HONOUR good commanders, but never truſt the ſole command to one. Reward the ſoldiery, let their pay be ſufficient to ſupport them with decency, and let them receive it punctually; but never ſuffer them to oppreſs a ſubject. Shall thoſe appointed to protect the people, act as their oppreſſors? Maintain the moſt rigorous diſcipline, but be ſparing of blood. Thou art indeed the ſource of honours, and from thee ſtipends flow, but life is at the diſpoſal of another.

KEEP thy troops in conſtant exerciſe; ſoldiers well-diſciplined and expert in their manoeuvres, will always be ſuperior to ſavages unſkilled in the uſe of arms. Study the European art of war, and improve upon it.

SPARE no pains to form a good infantry, the want of that may prove Perſia's ruin. If the Perſians, proud of their ſkill in horſemanſhip,

manſhip, will not ſerve as foot ſoldiers, rather let ſlaves bear arms than want an infantry *. Eſtabliſh the uſe of muſketry and cannon, otherwiſe thou muſt ſubmit to the diſgrace of ſtanding in fear of the Ottomans.

PROMOTE a common ſoldier to the higheſt military poſt, if his merits intitle him to ſuch promotion; but raiſe him by degrees, not by a ſudden arbitrary ſtride: an excellent Captain may cut but a ſorry figure as a General. Contrive new honorary rewards, they excite courage, and burthen not the nation.

LET thy Eaſtern, Weſtern, and Northern frontier towns be well fortified; let them be ſtrongly garriſoned, but never burthen thy inland provinces with fortifications or ſtanding troops.

NEVER diminiſh the number of thy troops, continue them on the ſame reſpectable condition, otherwiſe thou wilt render thyſelf contemptible; neither let thy army be too numerous, the burthen would be too great for thy people.

JUSTICE is the baſis of thy throne, let it be thy firſt care to ſee it impartially, freely, and purely adminiſtered.

* This maxim has been adopted by Uſong's ſucceſſors.

VIGI-

VIGILANTLY obſerve the judges, diſplace none unleſs clearly convicted of a crime. A judge muſt be beyond the reach of the envious malice of the great; but be inexorably rigorous to thoſe who have perverted the law to ſerve a private purpoſe.

SHEW the moſt cordial eſteem for the chief magiſtrates, their aſſiſtance is neceſſary to uphold thy authority with the people. Never will they permit lawleſs violence to ſhake that throne through the reflection of whoſe radiant beams they ſhine reſplendent. To them commit with confidence thy own perſonal cauſe, let the courts of juſtice freely determine between thee and the meaneſt peaſant; applaud their integrity when they give juſt ſentence againſt thee. The paltry loſs of a few acres of land will be repaid a thouſand fold by the confidence a people will place in their Sovereign, who prefers impartial juſtice to his own ſordid intereſt.

MAINTAIN as ſacred, the formalities and uſages of the law, without them all is deſpotiſm. Obſerve inviolably the ſtated days, favouring one Citizen is doing a partial injury to another.

NEVER recommend a cauſe to a judge, it gives a biaſs; 'tis thus the enemy of God ſtrives

ſtrives without ceaſing to ſeduce the juſt. Chuſe not ſpecial judges for any particular cauſes or miſdemeanors; thy people will believe even the guilty innocent, if ſentenced by an arbitrary court.

FREQUENTLY preſide in the ſupreme court, take cognizance thyſelf of ſome caſes. A little trouble will keep thy judges true to their truſt, they will dread thy juſtice and ſtand in awe of thy preſence.

PUNISH not with rigour or cruelty, but ſee alſo that no crime goes unpuniſhed; be tender how thou ſheddeſt blood, and when thou doſt ſpare a delinquent's life, endeavour to render it uſeful hereafter to the public, and the means of amendment to the criminal.

CONSENT under no pretence whatever, to encreaſing the taxes, or levying new impoſts. Art thou more rich for impoveriſhing thy people? The eaſy condition of the Perſian Peaſant will give him ſtrength and ſpirits to improve the fertile lands and plough the deſarts; foreigners groaning under the yoke of tyranny will gladly reſort to Perſia, and ſolicit leave to cultivate her barren waſtes; and thus will thy revenue be augmented double, becauſe thou doſt not raiſe it. Take thou delight in ſeeing that thy peo-

ple,

ple, after ſupplying their neceſſities, have ſomething left to procure them innocent pleaſures. The Perſians are men, and endowed with the ſame feelings as thyſelf.

LET the roads be kept in good order, commodious and ſecure. Protect the merchants, they are pillars of the State; honour them, their cares and toils add luſtre to thy throne.

USONG found not time to improve his navy; the Perſian coaſts are deſarts ſeldom cheared by the pleaſing ſight of ſhipping. Bear in mind that commerce carried on by land, is confined within narrow limits; by Sea it admits of infinite extent. It is commerce that hath raiſed Venice to its preſent grandeur; from a poor fiſhing iſland ſhe is become the Queen of all trading nations.

PATRONIZE all arts, encourage them by prizes, by ſtipends, by honorary premiums, but never by loans; they ruin young beginners by enticing them to undertake more than what is in their power to accompliſh. Regard the inventor even of a more ſerviceable tool, as a benefactor to the Empire, and him eſteem as a brother, who teaches thee to reap more ſheaves from an acre. Prefer a well-cultivated field to the moſt delightful pleaſure garden; admire a ſingle wheat ſtalk more

more than the moſt fragrant Mogori * flower. The excellence of a thing ſhould be eſtimated by its tendency to promote the general good.

If Perſia is populous, thou wilt of courſe be rich and powerful. Battles are won by numbers, and numbers acquire riches; an uninhabited paradiſe is barren. Never be apprehenſive that the increaſe of thy people will be too great for the land to maintain; numbers will convert a fallow field into a luxuriant garden. A country of vaſt extent is the weaker for being ſo extenſive; if there is a dearth of inhabitants, its frontiers will be expoſed, and ſuccours at too great a diſtance.

The Governors are repreſentatives of the Emperor's dignity, to them on that account belongs a ſtately pomp to awe inferiors and command obedience; the police of their reſpective provinces, the happineſs of the people, the increaſe of trade and agriculture, are all entruſted to their care. Chuſe them with the greateſt caution, O thou imperial Son of *Tſhengis!* by them Perſia will form her judgment of thee, let them be circumſtantially informed † of the number of

* Jeſſamin in its full growth.

† Chardin, Tom. VI.

the

the inhabitants in their provinces; of their revenues, natural and artificial productions, together with the different branches of traffic; let them have rules for their conduct on all occaſions. The barren Kerman muſt not be governed by the ſame regulations as the rich luxuriant meads round Tabris; the Guebre obeys the Emperor, the Kurde alſo is his friend.

Towns are the depoſits of a nation's wealth, though the country ſhould by no means be ſlighted; it is of advantage to the State, that the Peaſant ſhould earn his bread by the ſweat of his brow: by cuſtom he is inured to labour, and preſerved in vigorous health by temperance; his rural cot is the nurſery of warriors. Towns belong to trade and commerce, the arts thrive beſt together, and flouriſh moſt when like twin-ſiſters they labour in concert with each other. Towns alſo are barriers againſt invading foes, without ſuch ſhelter a country would be expoſed to perpetual plunder.

Protect therefore the towns, provide them with able Calentars, and in the capitals, place experienced Darogas; let them be ſelected from among their aſſeſſors: it is by practice men improve. Allow them competent ſalaries that they may not ſtand in need of extra-

extraordinary perquiſites; let the hopes of preferment quicken their zeal and make them anxious to deſerve promotion. Chuſe the Delegates from amongſt them, but truſt to no man the adminiſtration of that important office in the province wherein he was born.

A THOUSAND minute concerns employ the Officers of the Police. Prudence requires that a more ſlackened rule be uſed to guide thoſe inferior Officers of State, but ſtill they ſhould be awed by the Delegate, and by the dread of undergoing a rigid examination. They will never oppreſs thy people, if they are made to expect ſevere puniſhment for their petty malverſations.

ASSIST the towns by occaſional Subſidies; an handſome, private, well-built houſe, conſider as one of thine own palaces; it is of more advantage to the public weal, than the vaſt coloſſal pillars of *Hyſtaſpes*. Good houſes are ties that fetter down their Owner's conduct; he who has no property to forfeit will more readily be tempted to tranſgreſs the laws.

PERSIA is ſultry; her roads are ſolitary; her hills are bare of wood. Encourage the planting of trees; woody hills will gather waters, and deſarts may be fertilized, if ſtreams are near at hand. One acre recovered

vered from ſterility is worth twenty wreſted from an enemy.

THE Delegates are thine eyes; but, on no account permit them to become thine hands. If thou doſt entruſt them with penal authority, they will become arrant tyrants. They are to watch over the Clergy, the Army, the Courts of Juſtice, the Police, the Finances, and every ſource of public utility; they are to give timely information of any evil which is likely to infect thoſe ſources. Protect them with firmneſs, whilſt they continue faithful; ſhielded by thee they have nothing to fear from the menaces of the ſoldiers, the artifice of miniſters, nor the cabals of the people. A wiſe Prince will ever be attentive to the voice of the people; it is like a gathering, though remote thunder-ſtorm, which, if not diſpelled before it approaches too near, burſts in loud peals, and, with deſtructive flaſhes, bears down all before it. But ſtill more to be reverenced is the voice of truth; 'tis that thou art to expect from thy Delegate. He is not to conceal the violence of a Grandee, the ſupineneſs of a municipal Officer, or the rapacity of a Revenue Collector. The groans of every injured ſubject he is to convey to the Throne, and 'tis thy duty to examine into the

the merits of the complaints; and, by reproofs and puniſhment, to ſtop the progreſs of the evil.

THE Delegate is bound to act towards thee with vigilance, activity, and unſullied probity. If he diſcharges his important truſt with faithfulneſs, let him be near thy throne, and nearer to thine heart; if he abuſes his important office, no puniſhment can be too ſevere to alight on his guilty head.

THUS, my beloved ſon, have I pointed out to thee the path leading to that true felicity which I have long experienced. Calmly will USONG breathe his laſt, contented will he die, if he may but promiſe himſelf that thou wilt tread in thy grandſire's ſteps.

USONG alſo laid down rules for the Education of a Succeſſor to the Throne, who ſhould have loſt his father in his too tender years. "The welfare of Perſia, ſaid he, "depends ſolely upon the wiſdom and aſſi- "duity of its Monarch. So vaſt an Empire "muſt inevitably fall into decay and ruin, "if governed by a weak and negligent Em- "peror; ſhould therefore the Perſian ſceptre "ever fall into a minor's hands, then ſhall "his mother, aſſiſted by the heads of the four

" four Departments of State, ſuperintend his
" education. During his nonage the mother
" will be a ſafeguard to his perſon; the
" heads of the departments, by their abilities
" and experience, will endeavour to form
" him a worthy Ruler of ſo great a people.
" Thoſe who occupy the higheſt ſtations
" in the Empire, are to keep as ſacred and
" inviolable the precious depoſit entruſted to
" their care; they ſhall ſelect men the moſt
" virtuous, and beſt capable of inſpiring
" the young future Emperor with virtue,
" a love for his people, and the happy art
" of loving them effectually. The heads
" ſhall watch with caution, that thoſe hours
" be not loſt when the tender ductile mind is
" open to receive impreſſions the moſt ex-
" cellent. With ſacred horror ſhall they
" behold thoſe deſpicable flatterers, who
" would conceal from the young riſing Em-
" peror his failings, or teach him to ſlight
" inſtruction. Certainly there is more of
" true courage in thus oppoſing a Monarch's
" wayward will, than in encountering the
" hotteſt ſieges, and facing all the dangers
" of war. But a faithful ſon of Perſia will
" prefer its welfare to his own life. A
" negligent Prince becomes dangerous to
" his guardians; a well-educated Monarch,
" trained

" trained in the ſchool of virtue, will thank " them for their generous ardour and atten- " tion to his improvement."

USONG now viſibly declined; his age was attended with a ſlight fever, which, by degrees, exhauſted all his ſtrength. Some months after, a certain Nazareen was obſerved to be frequently with the Emperor; his name was *Veribeni*; he was one of the Armourers from Breſcia, who came with *Thomas de Imola* to Perſia: his birth place was ſituated among the vallies, which lie between France and Italy, and he was now the chief Director of the Artiſts. Each day the Emperor confered whole hours in private with him; they ſeemed not to treat of buſineſs, nor did *Veribeni* ever ſolicit any favours; his dreſs was ſuitable to his ſtation, and his deportment always ſerious, without the leaſt tincture of melancholy or dejection. At the commencement, however, of this intimacy, it was obſerved by all, that USONG ſaddened, grew penſive, often ſighed, and was ſometimes ſeen to lift up his eyes towards heaven, with looks expreſſive of inward anguiſh.

NUSHIRWANI, whoſe ſole anxiety was for the preſervation of her illuſtrious parent, could not endure the myſterious intercourſe car-

carried on between him and the unknown Stranger. She ventured to diſcloſe her apprehenſions to the Emperor, that ſhe ſuſpected *Veribeni* to be the cauſe of that encreaſing ſadneſs viſible in her venerable Father, and which ſeemed to threaten his precious life. USONG, embracing his affectionate daughter, begged ſhe would compoſe herſelf, and deſiſt from further enquiry. "Thou ſhalt know the "ſubject of my private converſation with "this Chriſtian; but the time is not yet "come."

BY degrees USONG's countenance brightened; his ſerioufneſs ſtill continued, but with a compoſed ſerenity which adorned his viſage, and dignified his whole deportment. His health continued much the ſame, but his heart was elevated with hopes ſublime; the chearing ray of which ſhone in his expanded boſom, and, like a celeſtial ſpark, diſpelled the intellectual gloom that had darkened his dejected mind.

SOON after this the Emperor notified his intentions of quitting the throne in favour of the *Shach Sade*. The affairs of State were now, he ſaid, grown too ponderous for him; but he would not neglect them, nor leave his people without an active head. He

alſo added, that his mind was occupied, and all his hours now engroſſed by a momentous concern, which required his utmoſt vigour. "Perhaps, ſaid he to his anxious NUSHIR-"WANI, this timely repoſe may lengthen "the days of my declining life."

THE day fixed for the ceremony arrived; the Generals, the heads of all the Departments, the Delegates, the Chief Judges, the Darogas, the Governors of the Provinces, and the few remaining Nowians who ſurvived, all aſſembled before the grand Divan. A throne was erected in the great open hall; on each ſide of the Meidan ſtood the choiceſt Perſian warriors, and the ſurrounding ſpace was filled with multitudes innumerable. USONG aſcended the throne with all the dignified ſplendor of an Eaſtern Emperor, and near him, on a lower ſeat, his ſucceſſor was placed.

USONG riſing, thus addreſſed the auguſt aſſembly: "Noble Perſians, fifty years are "elapſed this very day ſince you firſt placed "me on the throne of Perſia; thanks for "your confidence! thanks for your fide-"lity! No Perſian has ever interrupted "USONG's tranquility, no Perſian has been "his enemy; but I am no longer he "who led you undaunted to the field of "glory: my ſinews are unſtrung, my arm

"is

" is weak, my ſight faileth, my voice faul-
" ters, and ſoon, alas! ſoon will age reduce
" me to the meer ſhadow of an Emperor.

" YOU now ſee the laſt of USONG, but I
" ſhall not leave Perſia in an orphan ſtate; I
" have done my beſt to form a worthy ſuc-
" ceſſor. Receive him, I conjure you, with
" affectionate confidence, and love him as you
" have loved USONG; the blood of *Ali* and
" of *Tſhengis* flows intermingled through his
" veins; *Long live* ISHMAEL PADISHAW,
" *Emperor of Perſia!*" He here deſcended, and girding the hallowed ſword of Ruſtan round his Grandſon's loins, he placed him on the vacant throne.

DEJECTED, amazed, and yet pleaſed with the majeſtic gracefulneſs of the noble youth; accuſtomed to revere the words of USONG as Wiſdom's pureſt dictates; the people in one general acclamation, cried: " *Long live*
" ISHMAEL PADISHAW, *may he reign like*
" USONG!"

THE grandees, according to the Eaſtern cuſtom, did homage to the new Emperor, and USONG fatigued, withdrew to ſeek repoſe.

VERIBENI now ſeldom left him; his ſtrength daily decreaſed, yet daily did his eyes beam forth refulgent joy, not of earthly

but celeſtial origin. For the laſt time he ſent for his ſucceſſor, and thus addreſſed him: "*Iſhmael* is young, but a lover of virtue; "liſten my ſon to the counſels of thy mo- "ther, I heard them and have found them "profitable, and who can love thee with "greater tenderneſs? Truſt not too much "to thine own opinion, conſult, and never "reſolve till thou haſt well weighed every "circumſtance. I have endeavoured to fill "the different offices with worthy men, "diſplace them not haſtily, love the friends "of thy Progenitor, they have been true to "him, and experience has perfected their "wiſdom." He embraced *Iſhmael* much affected by this diſcourſe. He next turned to NUSHIRWANI, who was diſſolved in tears, and with a look of parental tenderneſs, he ſaid, "Farewell, farewell, my deareſt "Daughter, worthy to be called my friend! "Uſe thy every attractive charm, exert that "ſweetneſs of temper for which thou art "conſpicuous, to preſerve the confidence of "thy ſon; on your mutual harmony de- "pends the fate of Perſia. After my deceaſe "*Veribeni* will acquaint thee with the "words that have made death to me a wel- "come wiſhed-for gueſt. Farewell! and— "mayeſt thou die like USONG."

HERE

HERE he embraced his conſort, bedewed with tears, and prayed her to ſeek comfort in NUSHIRWANI's friendſhip; and taking leave of his faithful *Sherin*, and of all his intimates, he requeſted to be left alone. "I can no more," ſaid he, fainting. *Veribeni* remained with him. At intervals the Emperor was heard to anſwer ſome of the diſcourſes of the ſage *Vaudois*, ſoon after he uttered only ſhort affirmatives, and *Veribeni* ſpoke now alone.

NUSHIRWANI, who was in the next apartment, could no longer contain herſelf, ſhe entered and threw herſelf at the feet of her expiring Parent, "My father," cried cried ſhe, wringing her trembling hands! USONG beheld her with a countenance ſparkling with celeſtial joy; calm and ſerene, without a cloud, his viſage ſhone. One look, one fond parental look, he fixed upon his darling child—then cloſed his eyes for ever.

VERIBENI, as a reward for his faithful ſervices, was offered all that imperial munificence could beſtow. "No, ſaid he, what "I have done will not go unrewarded; I "ſhall die content, the greateſt of men has "known the truth; but let me not be "ſuſpected of any worldly motives. The

"ſole

"ſole requeſt I have to make is this:
"Receive, O moſt excellent NUSHIRWANI,
"this ſimple narrative of the laſt hours of
"thy glorified parent, it is the laſt legacy he
"bequeathed." *Veribeni* betook himſelf to ſolitude, and ſoon was his wiſh accompliſhed. He died not long after, without a friend, without a witneſs, without any human comfort or conſolation; but HE did not abandon, HE was with him, who aſſwages the grief, and wipes away all tears from the eyes of thoſe he loves.

FINIS.

ERRATA.

page.	*line.*	*inſtead of*	*read*
10	10	countries	environs
25	8	our	the
26	13	wsa	was
40	4	but that even	but even
56	14	was	were
61	9	bedewing	bedewed
66	4	On entering	Entering on
97	26	and	whilſt
103	6	Coconor	Kokonor
116	15	Ediene	Edrene
117	26	wanted	warned
127	6	years	ears
145	26	illuſtrious	glorious
168	23	loyalty	royalty
178	5	complaint	complot
186	11	ſlaughtered	devoured
213	29	*Machmud*	*Mahomet*
214	16	threating	threatening
240	28	*Machmud*	*Mohamet*

In the Preſs, and ſoon will be publiſhed:

LETTERS

CONCERNING

THE MOST IMPORTANT TRUTHS

OF

CHRISTIAN REVELATION.

BY

THE AUTHOR OF THE HISTORY OF USONG.

Printed for C. HEYDINGER, oppoſite Eſſex Street, Strand.

*** *Theſe Letters are what Baron* Haller *alludes to in his Preface, and are ſuppoſed to contain the account of the laſt days of* USONG.